

ARABIC GRAMMAR

PARADIGMS. LITTERATURE, CHRESTOMATHY

AND

GLOSSARY

BY

DR. A. SCHÖN

PROFESSOR IN THE UNIVERSITY OF TÜBINGEN.



CARLSRUHE AND LEIPSIC
H. REUTHER

✓ LONDON
WILLIAMS & NOBGEATE
14 HENRIETTA STREET
COVENT GARDEN.

NEW YORK
B. WESTERMANN & COMP.
888, BROADWAY.

PARIS
MAISONNEUVE & CIE.
25, QUAI VOLTAIRE

1885.

All rights reserved.

CONTENTS.

GRAMMAR.

I. LETTERS AND SOUNDS (§ 1—10).

	Page
§ 1. Consonants	3
§ 2. Long Vowels	6
§ 3. Short Vowels, Nunation, Gézma	8
§ 4. Hamza	9
§ 5. Teshdid	10
§ 6. Wasla	12
§ 7. Medda	15
§ 9. The Tone	16
§ 10. Numerals and Abbreviations	17

II. ETYMOLOGY (§ 11—71).

Chap. I. The Pronoun (§ 11—14).

§ 11. Pronomina personalia	18
§ 12. Pronomina demonstrativa	20
§ 13. Pronomina relativa	22
§ 14. Pronomina interrogativa	23

• Chap. II. The Verb (§ 15—46).

§ 15. The root form	23
§ 16. General view of the derived stems	24
§ 17. I. Stem	25
§ 18. II. Stem	25

	Page
§ 19. III. Stem	26
§ 20. IV. Stem	26
§ 21. V. Stem	27
§ 22. VI. Stem	27
§ 23. VII. Stem	27
§ 24. VIII. Stem	28
§ 25. IX. and XI. Stem	28
§ 26. X. Stem	29
§ 27. The quadriliteral Verb	29
§ 28. The Passive	30
§ 29. Tenses	30
§ 30. Moods	31
§ 31. Imperative	31
§ 32. The Persons	32
§ 33. Participles	33
§ 34. Infinitive	33
§ 35. Verba mediæ geminatæ	34
§ 36. Verba hamzata	36
§ 37. Weak Verbs	38
§ 38. Verba primæ و and ي	38
§ 39. Verba mediæ و and ي	39
§ 40. Verba tertiæ و and ي	41
§ 41. Doubly weak Verbs	45
§ 42. The Verb كَيْسَى	46
§ 43. Verbs of praise and blame	46
§ 44. Forms of admiration	46
§ 45. The Verb with Pronominal suffixes	47
§ 46. Sign of the Accusative	47

Chap. III. The Noun (§ 47—65).

a. FORMATION OF NOUNS.

§ 47. Derived Nouns, Intensive forms	48
§ 48. Nomina loci, instrumenti, speciei	50
§ 49. Nomina relativa and deminutiva	51

b. GENDER OF NOUNS.

	Page
§ 50. Masculine and feminine Gender	52
§ 51. Formation of the Feminine	52

c. INFLECTION OF NOUNS.

§ 52. Number and Case	54
§ 53. Formation of the Dual and Plural	54
§ 54. Nomina triptota and diptota	55
§ 55. Nomina diptota	56
§ 56. Inflection of the determinate Nouns	57
§ 57. Abbreviation of Dual and Plural Nouns	58
§ 58. Noun with Pronominal suffixes	59
§ 59. Vocalic additions	59
§ 60. Proper names connected with ابن	60
§ 61. Vocative	60
§ 62. Broken Plurals	61
§ 63. List of the chief forms	61
§ 64. Broken Plurals of Nouns with more than three radicals	65
§ 65. Irregular Nouns	66

Chap. IV. Numerals (§ 66—68).

§ 66. Cardinals	69
§ 67. Connection of Numbers with the thing numbered	71
§ 68. Ordinal numbers and fractions	72

Chap. V. Particles (§ 69—71).

§ 69. Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions	73
§ 70. Inseparable Particles	73
§ 71. Prepositions and Conjunctions with Suffixes	74

III. SYNTAX § (72—104).

Chap. I. Tenses.

§ 72. Perfect and Imperfect	76
§ 73. Usage of the Perfect	76

	Page
§ 74. Usage of the Imperfect	76
§ 75. Subjunctive	79
§ 76. Jussive	79
§ 77. Participle	80

Chap. II. Government of the Verb.

§ 78. Accusative	81
§ 79. Object, double Object	81
§ 80. Absolute Object	82
§ 81. Accusative as Predicate	82
§ 82. Accusative of nearer definition	83

Chap. III. Government of the Noun.

§ 83. Syntactical additions to the Noun	84
§ 84. Determination	85
§ 85. Apposition	85
§ 86. Qualification	86
§ 87. Genitive Relation	86
§ 88. Special kinds of Genitive	87
§ 89. The Genitive inseparable	89

Chap. IV. The simple sentence.

§ 90. Distinction of Nominal and Verbal sentences	89
§ 91. The Verb in a Verbal sentence	90
§ 92. The Predicate in a Nominal sentence	91
§ 93. Connection between Subject and Predicate	92
§ 94. Peculiarities of the same	93
§ 95. The Particles 'inna and 'anna	93
§ 96. Dependent sentences	95
§ 97. Asyndeton	95
§ 98. Exceptive Particle	96

Chap. V. Compound sentences.

§ 99. Relative sentences	96
§ 100. Sentences denoting a state or condition	99

	Page
§ 101. Temporal sentences	99
§ 102. Conditional sentences with the Perfect	100
§ 103. Conditional sentences with the Jussive	100
§ 104. The Participle fa	101

PARADIGMS.

Strong triliteral Verb Act. I.	2
Strong triliteral Verb Pass. I.	4
Quadriliteral Verb, derived Stems	5
Strong triliteral Verb, derived Stems	6
Verbum mediæ geminatæ Act. I	8
Verbum mediæ geminatæ Pass. I	9
Verbum mediæ geminatæ, derived Stems	10
Verbum primæ radicalis و and ي	11
Verbum mediæ radicalis و Act. I	12
Verbum mediæ radicalis ي Act. I	13
Verbum mediæ radicalis و or ي Pass. I	14
Verbum mediæ radicalis و and ي, derived Stems	15
Verbum tertîæ radicalis و (فَعَلَ) Act. I	16
Verbum tertîæ radicalis ي (فَعَلَ) Act. I	17
Verbum tertîæ radicalis و or ي (فَعَلَ) Act. I	18
Verbum tertîæ radicalis و or ي Pass. I	19
Verbum tertîæ radicalis و or ي; derived Stems	20
<hr/>	
Nomen generis masculini	22
Nomen generis feminini	23
Nouns in "in" and "an"	24
Noun with Personal suffixes	25

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

History of literature	29
Chrestomathies	30
Grammars	31

	Page
Lexicography	33
Koran and Islam	36
History	37
Geography	40
Poetry	42
Miscellaneous	43

CHRESTOMATHY.

- A. For translation into English:
- I. The history of Queen Bilkis from the prophetic legends of Ta'labi 49
 - II. Extracts from the biographies of the first three Chalifs from the "golden meadows" of Masudi
- B. For translation into Arabic

GLOSSARY.

To part A of the Chrestomathy	109
To part B of the Chrestomathy	167

GRAMMAR.

PART I.

CHARACTERS AND SOUNDS.

§ 1 a. *The Consonants.* The Arabs originally used the Syriac character and the Syriac alphabet, in which the characters are in the same order, as in the Hebrew alphabet. Remains of this older order are still preserved in the numerical values of the letters (cf. the table). In later times the letters were seldom used as numerals. By means of diacritical points the Arabs early distinguished a number of sounds which in that older alphabet were not separated from one another. And many characters became by abbreviation so similar to one another that such diacritical marks were necessary to distinguish them. These similar forms were afterwards placed next one another in the alphabet. Thus the letters stand now in the following order which is tolerably general. The alphabet consists of 28 consonants of the following forms. These are written and read from right to left,

Names	Figures				Value			
	unconnected	connected only with the preceding	connected on both sides	connected only with the following	Pronunciation	Transcription	Numerical value	Hebrew
1 ^س اَلِف * Alif	ا	ل	—	—	cf. § 2 and 4		1	א
2 ^ب بَا Bā	ب	ب	ب	ب	b	b	2	ב
3 ^ت تَا Tā	ت	ت	ت	ت	t	t	400	ת
4 ^ث ثَا Thā	ث	ث	ث	ث	English hard th as in <i>thing</i>	t	500	ת
5 ^ج جِيم Jim	ج	ج	ج	ج	orig. g hard; later g as in Italian <i>giorno</i> ; English j	g	3	ג
6 ^ح حَا Hhā	ح	ح	ح	ح	strongh with friction	h	8	ח
7 ^خ خَا Chā	خ	خ	خ	خ	German hard ch; Scotch ch in <i>loch</i>	h	600	ח
8 ^د دَال Dāl	د	د	—	—	d on the teeth	d	4	ד
9 ^ذ ذَال Dhāl	ذ	ذ	—	—	English soft th as in <i>this</i>	d	700	ד
10 ^ر رَا Rā	ر	ر	—	—	dental r	r	200	ר
11 ^ز زَا Zā	ز	ز	—	—	weak vocalic s, like French and English z	z	7	ז
12 ^س سِين Sīn	س	س	س	س	hard s	s	60	ס
13 ^ש שִׁין Shīn	ש	ש	ש	ש	German sch English sh	š	300	ש

* In such technical terms it is usual to leave the ending *s* i. e. *un* (cf. § 3b) unpronounced after the fashion of modern Arabic.

	Names	Figures				Value		
		unconnected	connected only with the preceding	connected on both sides	connected only with the following	Pronunciation	Transcription	Numerical value
14	صَادُ Sād	ص	ص	ص	ص	emphatic s	s	90
15	ضَادُ Dād	ض	ض	ض	ض	upper palatal d	d	800
16	طَاءُ Tā	ط	ط	ظ	ط	emphatic t	t̤	9
17	زَاءُ Zā	ظ	ظ	ظ	ظ	weak emphatic s	z	900
18	عَيْنُ Ain	ع	ع	ع	ع	arises by squeezing the violently compressed Glottis	ʿ	70
19	غَيْنُ Ghain	غ	غ	غ	غ		ġ	1000
20	فَاءُ Fā	ف	ف	ف	ف	f	f	80
21	كَافُ Kāf	ق	ق	ق	ق	deep emphatic k	k	100
22	كَافُ Kāf	ك	ك	ك	ك	k	k	20
23	لَامُ Lām	ل	ل	ل	ل	l	l	30
24	مِيمُ Mim	م	م	م	م	m	m	40
25	نُونُ Nūn	ن	ن	ن	ن	n	n	50
26	هَاءُ Hā	ه	ه	ه	ه	h	h	5
27	وَاوُ Wāw	و	و	—	—	English w	w	6
28	يَاءُ Yā	ي	ي	ي	ي	y	y	10

and are in part connected with one another, in part left unconnected, as the table on pages 4 and 5 shows.

b. When \mathfrak{z} (No. 26) standing at the end of a word denotes the feminine termination, two dots are placed over it, to show that it is to be pronounced like \mathfrak{t} (No. 3); thus \mathfrak{z} .

c. Certain letters are very frequently, especially at the beginning of words, placed not alongside one another, but above one another: this is the case with the characters ج ح خ (Nos. 5—7), e. g. \mathfrak{z} instead of \mathfrak{z} , \mathfrak{z} instead of \mathfrak{z} , \mathfrak{z} instead of \mathfrak{z} etc. Instead of \mathfrak{l} (Nos. 23 and 1) usually \mathfrak{y} or \mathfrak{y} is written; this connection is so frequent that the character is even reckoned by the Arabs as an extra letter with the name of Lām-Alif.

§ 2 a. *The vowel signs.* Originally the Arabs had signs only for the long vowels \bar{a} , \bar{i} , \bar{u} , and the diphthongs au , ai the second part of which they treated as a consonant; the signs were \mathfrak{l} (No. 1) for \bar{a} , \mathfrak{y} (No. 27) for \bar{u} and (after a for) au , \mathfrak{y} (No. 28) for \bar{i} and (after a for) ai . These signs were regarded as *quiescent*; the sign of a consonant's being without a vowel (cf. § 3 c) was however in later times added only to \mathfrak{y} and \mathfrak{y} in those cases, where they repre-

sented the diphthongs. Examples: قَالَ *kāla*, سِيرَ *sīra*, قُولِي *kūlī*, بَيْعٌ *bai'un* (cf. § 3 b), ذَوْمٌ *naumun*.

b. In the oldest writing the *ā* is not in all cases represented by ا, but is left sometimes unrepresented. This non-representation is the rule in a series of very common words; generally however in such cases a perpendicular stroke is placed over the consonant which is to be pronounced with long *ā*; e. g. هَذَا (instead of هَآذَا) *hādā*, اَللّٰهُ *allāhu* (see § 5), اَلرَّحْمٰنُ *ar-rahmānu*. Frequently however in our editions only َ is printed in such cases for the *ā*, e. g. هَذَا.

c. In some few words و, after an *a* denotes, not the pronunciation *au* but *ā*, probably an originally indistinct *ā*; in this case also the perpendicular stroke is usual, e. g. حَيٰوةٌ *hayātun* "life" (on the other hand the same word with suffixes is written with ا, حَيَاتُهُ *hayātuhu* "his life").

d. As the final letter ي likewise in many words serves to denote a long *ā*; in such cases it (like و, in c) does not receive the sign of being non-vocalic (§ 3 c), e. g. رَمٰى (رمى) *ramā*; with suffix رَمٰاهُ *ramāhu*.

REM. Instead of دُنْيٰى *dunyā*, as it ought to be written according to the rules for the formation

of nouns § 51 b, ذُنْيَا is written, to avoid two ي's coming together.

e. Sometimes an † is added after a final ū or au, without affecting the pronunciation, e. g. كَتَبُوا katabū, رَمَوْا ramau; this † was originally used in the MSS. to separate a final و from the following word.

§ 3 a. *The short vowels* were originally quite unrepresented (many books, especially those printed in the east, are printed without any vowels at all); in later times the following signs were used for the short vowels (and, in connection with the signs mentioned in § 2, for the long vowels also):

1) فَتْحَة Fatha (or فَتْح Fath) َ for the vowel *a* (to be pronounced *ā* or *e* in certain cases), e. g. قَتَلَ katala, قَالَ kāla.

2) كَسْرَة Kesra (or كَسْر Kesr) ِ for the vowel *i*, e. g. غَضِبَ gadiba, يَبِيعُ yabī'u.

3) ضَمَة Damma (or ضَم Damm) ُ for the vowel *u*, e. g. يَكْتُبُ yaktubu; يَفُوتُ yafūtu.

b. When these signs for the short vowels are doubled at the end of a word, they are to be pronounced with a final *n* (Nunation, Arabic تَنْوِينٌ

Tanwīn), e. g. شَمْسٍ *šamsin*, رَجُلٌ *raǧulun*; an ʾ, which has no influence on the pronunciation is added as an outward sign to the nunation *an*, e. g. مَالًا *mālan*; this ʾ is left only in those cases where the nunation is affixed to the fem. ending ʾ (cf. above § 1 a) e. g. مَرْكُوبَةً *markūbatan*, or where an ʾ, or in its stead a ى quiescing in *a*, already stands at the end of a word, e. g. رَبًّا *riban*, هُدًى *hudan* (§ 2 c); likewise sometimes after ʾ (§ 4).

c. The fact of a consonant's not being accompanied by a vowel is shown by جَزْمَةٌ *Ǧezma*, also called سُكُونٌ *Sukūn* ["rest"], e. g. سَافَرْتُ *sāfartu*, مَاشَيْتَ *mašaita* (cf. § 2). On the omission of this sign cf. § 5 a. A consonant, which is to be pronounced without a vowel, is called "quiescent".

§ 4. *Hamza*. The sign هَمْزَةٌ *Hamza* ʾ (the form of which has arisen from ع 'Ain) is peculiar to the Arabic writing as a further consonantal sign. It denotes the cutting off of the stream of breath, which can precede or follow a vowel; it corresponds therefore at the beginning of a syllable to the Greek spiritus lenis. In the transliteration we denote Hamza by ʾ; at the beginning of a word we often leave it unrepresented.

In most cases an *Alif* occurs as the bearer of this Hamza: the Alif has in this case an essentially different function from that noted in § 2. When an *i* sound follows, the sign ٓ is placed under the *Alif*. Examples: أَمْرٌ *'amrun*, إِبِلٌ *'ibilun*, أُمٌّ *'umamun*; سَأَلَ *sa'ala*, رَأْسٌ *ra'-sun*; إِكْرَأْ *ik-ra'*, لَا أَمَّا *la'-a-ma*. In the last three instances Hamza closes the syllable; in the last case the following syllable again begins with Hamza.

b. Before or after an *i* or *u* sound the letters و and ي occur in most cases as the bearer of Hamza (in such a case ي is without the two points), e. g. بَوْسٌ *ba'usa*, يُوْتَرُ *yu'taru*, يُوَاتَرُ *yu'ātaru*; جِئْتُ *gi'ta*, صَيْبٌ *ṣa'iba*, يُبَارِي *yubārī'u*.

c. After a long vowel, as also in most cases after Sukūn, Hamza has usually no bearer, but is placed on or above the line, e. g. ارْدَأْ *irdā'un*, بَرٌّ *bar'un*, مَمْلُوءَةٌ *mamlū'atun*; حَاطَةٌ *haṭī'atun*.

§ 5. *Tešdīd*. a. The sharpened pronunciation of a consonant is shown by the sign of reduplication ّ, called تَشْدِيدٌ *Tešdīd* or شَدٌّ *Šedd* (the sign ّ is borrowed from the initial of this word), e. g. سَبَّ *sabba*, تَرَحَّلْ *tarahḥulun*. This reduplication of a consonant

is either (as in the above examples) due to the character of a nominal or verbal form, or is the result of assimilation. In the latter case the consonant assimilated to the following one is for the most part expressed in writing, but does not receive the sign of vowellessness—as it really no longer exists in respect of the pronunciation—, e. g. ^ʔأَرَدْتُ to be pronounced 'arattu, أَخَذْتُ aḥatti.

b. This assimilation (which however in the examples just given is not always represented in writing) takes place always with the *l* of the article ^ʔأَلْ, when it stands before the consonants ذ, ن, ت, ث, ط, ظ, ص, ش, س, ز, ر, (i. e. before dentals, sibilants and *r, l, n*) e. g. اَلتَّاجِرُ *ettāgīru*, اَلثَّلَجُ *ettalǧu*, اَلشَّمْسُ *eššamsu* (the sun), but اَلْقَمَرُ *elqamaru* (the moon). On account of the antithesis represented by the last two stereotyped examples, these are called solar letters in opposition to the lunar letters, with which the *l* of the article cannot be assimilated.

c. The words مِّنْ *min*, عَنْ *an*, أَنْ *an* (and إِنَّ *in*) are for the most part written as one with some short words beginning with م *m* or ل *l*, and then assimilate

their final ن *n* to the following sound, e. g. مِمَّا *mimmā* from مِّنْ مَّا *min mā*, أَلَّا *'allā* from لَا *'an lā*.

§ 6. *Waṣla* ~. a. There are a great number of words in Arabic, which begin with an easily vanishing vowel, succeeded by a quiescent consonant, or more properly which begin with the quiescent consonant itself. In such cases the vowel or the helping vowel (e. g. أُكْتُلْ *ukṭul* instead of كُتُلْ *ḵṭul*) regularly falls away after another word. As a sign of this elision وَصَلَةٌ *waṣla* ~ (from ص) is placed over the ا, which is the bearer of the vowel sign, e. g. بِنْتُ الْوَزِيرِ *bintulwazīri*; the two words so joined must then be pronounced in close connection. Such an Alif bearing *Waṣla* is called a connective Alif, in opposition to a disjunctive Alif, i. e. an Alif with Hamza (cf. § 4).

b. When a connective Alif stands at the beginning of a paragraph, it is pronounced as a full vowel, but in writing only the corresponding vowel sign may be placed on the Alif, never Hamza, e. g. الرَّسُولُ *arrasūlu*, أُخْرِجْ *uhruġ* alongside of قَالَ أَخْرِجْ to be pronounced *kālahruġ*.

c. In the latter example the division of syllables now is *kā-lah-ruġ*. If the vowel preceding a connective Alif is long, it is pronounced short in the now closed syllable, e. g. *فِي الْفُلْكِ* prop. *fī-lfulki*, now however forming the syllables *fil-ful-ki*; likewise *رَضِيَ اللَّهُ* *riḍā-llāhi* = *ri-ḍal-lā-hi*; *ذَبَحُوا أَلْوَزَ* (§ 2 e) *da-ba-ḥul-wazza*.

d. If the word before a connective Alif ends in a vowelless (quiescent) consonant, it receives a helping vowel. The most usual helping vowel* (in such a case is *i*, e. g. *ضَرَبَتِ الْعَبْدَ* *ḍarabati-ṭabda* (instead of *ضَرَبَتْ*). Sometimes original vowels return, e. g. *هُمْ* *humu-lkāfirūna*; the first word is in other cases pronounced *هُمْ* *hum*, but was originally pronounced *humū*. Sometimes the same vowel is chosen as auxiliary, as stands under the initial Alif when unconnected, e. g. *إِسْتَقْبَالَ* connected with the article *أَلْ* = *الْإِسْتَقْبَالَ* *alistikbālu* with helping vowel *i*. — The nunation (§ 3 b) also is treated as ending in a consonant; in this case it is most usual to add an *i*, e. g. *رَجُلٌ أَسْمُهُ* = *رَجُلُنِ أَسْمُهُ* *raġuluni-smuhu*.

REM. The preposition عَنْ „away from“ is changed to عَنِ, and the preposition مِنْ “from” to مِنِّ before a connective Alif; before the article however it is changed to مِّنَ.

e. The cases too, in which a word ends in a so-called diphthong (cf. § 2), are subject to the same rule, viz. that a quiescent final consonant must receive a helping vowel before a connective Alif; this helping vowel is *u* or *i* corresponding to و or ي, e. g. مُصْطَفَوُ اللَّهِ *muṣṭafawu-llāhi* instead of مُصْطَفَى اللَّهِ, رَجُلَى الْبَقَرَةِ *riġṭayi-lbakarati* instead of رَجُلُ الْبَقَرَةِ (Likewise with the ending ُوا § 2 e).

f. In some cases the connective Alif is left out altogether in writing:

1) with the article آل, when the particles ل *li* or لَ *la* precede, e. g. لِلْحَقِّ *liḥḥakki* for لِالْحَقِّ, لَلْمَجْدُ *lalmaġdu* for لِالْمَجْدِ.

2) with the word ابْنُ “son”, when it is in apposition to the proper name of the son, and governs the name of the father, e. g. مُسْلِمُ بْنُ الْوَلِيدِ *muslimu-bnu-lwalīdi*. Muslim son of al-Walid. At the beginning of a line however ابْنُ is written in such a case.

3) with the word ^{iṣm} *ismun* "name". after the preposition ب *bi*, e. g. بِسْمِ اللَّهِ *bismi-llāhi* "in the name of God".

§ 7. *Medda*. a. In Arabic two Alifs cannot stand together. When this would happen, only one Alif is written with the sign مَدَّة ^{Medda} or Medd ~ placed over it. This sign ~ has arisen from مَد Medd. At the beginning of a word or syllable Medda has at the same time the value of Hamza; the sign Fatḥ is also omitted, e. g. أَكِلٌ ^{ākilun} for أَأَكِلٌ ^{kur'ānun}, قُرْآنٌ ^{kur'ānun} for قُرْآنٌ; likewise آمَنٌ ^{āmāna} for أَآمَنٌ, as the Hamza of the second Alif is lost after the first.

REM. رَأَى ^{ra'a} "he has seen", for example becomes with suffixes according to § 2 e properly رَأَاهُ ^{ra'āhu}, but is written رَأَى.

b. As a Hamza ء following a long ا ā is written on the line (§ 4 c) without an Alif as bearer, the Alif preceding such a Hamza receives Medda in most cases, though this Medda has no effect on the pronunciation of the word, e. g. جَاءَ ^{gā'a} for جَاءَ, تَفَاءَلُوا ^{tafā'alū}; so also where و or ي act as bearers of Hamza, e. g. أَحَبَّاهُ ^{aḥibbā'uhu}, كَاتَلُوا ^{kā'ilun}.

REM. Two و's also are not willingly written alongside one another (even if the former is merely a bearer of Hamza after § 4 c), e. g. جَاوُوا *ǧā'ū* is written جَاوُوا, دَاوُدُ *dā'ūdu* (David) دَاوُدُ (often wrongly without Hamza, دَاوُد).

§ 8. *The Syllable.* Every syllable begins with a consonant. A short syllable consists of a consonant with a short vowel, e. g. the second syllable of مَاتَ *mā-tā*; a long syllable consists either 1) of a consonant and a long vowel, e. g. the syllable *mā* in the above example, or 2) of a consonant and a short vowel with a consonant following, e. g. both syllables of قَتَلَ *kat-lun* (likewise of مَوْتَ *mau-tun*), or seldom 3) of a shut syllable with a long vowel, e. g. the first syllable of مَادَّةَ *mād-da-tun*. Such a syllable can be called a doubly long syllable.

§ 9. *The tone.* The accent in Arabic is thrown forward till it meets a long syllable; when there is no long syllable, the accent is on the first syllable of the word; the final simple long syllable is not reckoned a long syllable for purposes of accentuation. Examples with short final syllables: ضَارَبَ *ḍāraba*, اسْتَنَكَرَ *istānkara*; examples with long final syllables: تَمَامْتُمْ *tamāmtum*, فَردٌ *fārdun*, مَمْلَكَةٌ *māmlakatun*.

Exceptions: A syllable with connective Alif (§ 6), as e. g. in *اِفْتَعَلَ* (cf. § 24), cannot bear the accent; it must therefore be pronounced *iftá'ala*; in like manner inseparable præpositive monosyllabic particles like *وَ*, *فَ* (cf. § 70) do not alter the accent, e. g. *فَمَشَى* *famášā*.

§ 10. *Signs for numbers and abbreviations.* The usual signs for the Arabic numerals are the following:

٠, ١, ٢, ٣, ٤, ٥, ٦, ٧, ٨, ٩

0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9.

The tens, hundreds, &c. are written on the left of the units &c., e. g. ١٩ 19, ١٨٨٥ 1885.

Some of the most common abbreviations are:

— = عَلَيْهِ السَّلَامُ 'alaihi-ssalāmu Peace be upon him!

— = صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ ṣalla-llāhu 'alaihi wa-sallama God be gracious to him and give him prosperity (of the prophet).

PART II.

ET Y M O L O G Y.

Chapter I.

The Pronoun.

§ 11. a. The *pronomina personalia* are either *separata* or *suffixa*. The *pronomina personalia separata* have the following forms:

	Sing.	Plur.	Dual
I. Pers.	أَنَا	نَحْنُ	
II. Pers.	{ <div> masc. أَنْتَ <div></div> </div> <div> fem. أَنْتِ <div></div> </div>	{ <div> أَنْتُمْ <div></div> </div> <div> أَنْتِنَ <div></div> </div>	أَنْتُمَا
III. Pers.	{ <div> masc. هُوَ <div></div> </div> <div> هِيَ <div></div> </div>	{ <div> هُمْ <div></div> </div> <div> هُنَّ <div></div> </div>	هُمَا

In connection with وَ and ف (cf. § 70) the pronouns of the 3. Pers. sing. may lose their first vowel
e. g. فَهِيَ, وَهُوَ.

b. The *pronomina personalia suffixa* which in connection with a noun express a genitive, and in connection with a verb express an accusative, are as follows:

		Sing.	Plur.	Dual
I. Pers.	with the Noun	—ى		
	with the Verb	—نى	—نا	
II. Pers.	masc.	—كَ	—كُمْ	—كُمَا
	fem.	—كِ	—كُنَّ	
III. Pers.	masc.	—هُ	—هُمْ	—هُمَا
	fem.	—هَا	—هُنَّ	

c. Before a connective Alif (§ 6 d) the suffixed pronoun of the 1. Pers. Sing. often receives its original *a* as auxiliary vowel, e. g. **أَعْطَانِي الْكِتَابَ** or **أَعْطَانِي الْكِتَابَ**. After *ā*, *ī* and *ai* the nominal suffix of the 1. Pers. Sing. has the form **—ى** *ya*. Sometimes the suffix of the 1. Pers. Sing. is denoted not by **—ى**, but simply by the vowel Kesr **—** e. g. **رَبِّ** my lord! thus after **أَحِبَّاءَ** with the suffix of the 1. Pers. Sing. **أَحِبَّائِي** or **أَحِبَّائِي** *'ahibbā'ī* (cf. § 4 b).

d. The suffixes *هُنَّ*, *هُمَا*, *هُنَّ* after a preceding *i* sound take the vowel *i* instead of *u*, and thus become *سِ*, *هَمَا*, *هِنَّ*, e. g. *مَالِ* instead of *مَالِ*. *هَم* before a connective Alif is generally pronounced *هَم*.—The suffixes *كُم* and *هَم* before a connective Alif take their original form *كُم* and *هَم*.

For further remarks on the connection of the nomina suffixa see § 68 and Table XXI.

e. The reflexive pronoun, when a certain amount of emphasis is required, is generally expressed by the word *نَفْسُ* *nafsun* "soul", to which the corresponding suffixes are attached; in many cases the personal pronoun sufficiently expresses the reflexive.

§ 12. The *demonstrative pronouns* are the following (for the inflexion cf. § 53 a):

a. The simple pronoun, which seldom occurs:

		Masc.	Fem.
Sing.		ذَا	تَا; تِي; ذِي; ذِي
Dual	Nom.	ذَانِ	تَانِ
	Gen. Acc.	ذَيْنِ	تَيْنِ
Plur.		أُولَئِكَ (ūlā'ik) or أُولَئِذَا (ūlā'iz)	

This simple pronoun is compounded:

b. with the demonstrative particle هَا, which is generally written defectively ه (or less correctly هَ § 2b). Hence arises the usual demonstrative pronoun, referring to the nearer object = *this* (Germ. "dieser", Lat. "hic"):

		Masc.	Fem.
Sing.		هَذَا	هَذِهِ (هَذِي)
Dual	Nom.	هَذَانِ	هَتَانِ
	Gen. Acc.	هَذَيْنِ	هَتَيْنِ
Plur.		هَؤُلَاءِ ✓	

c. with a suffix of the 2. Pers., which in the older language, especially in that of the Koran, varies between the Sing. Dual and Plural according as one or more persons are referred to (e. g. ذَلِكُمْ, ذَلِكُمَا); otherwise however هُ is used without change. Between this هُ and the simple demonstrative pronoun the demonstrative particle هِ can be inserted. Thus two forms of the demonstrative pronoun arise, referring to the remoter object = *that* (Germ. "jener", Lat. "ille").

	Masc.	Fem.
Sing.	(ذَلِكَ, ذَالِكَ) ذَاكَ, ذَاكَ	تِلْكَ, (تِيْكَ) تَاكَ
Dual	Nom. ذَاكَ, ذَانِكَ	تَاكَ, تَانِكَ
	Gen. Acc. ذَيْنِكَ, ذَيْنِكَ	تَيْنِكَ, تَيْنِكَ
Plur.	أُولَئِكَ (أُولَآكَ), seldom	

§ 13. The *relative pronouns* are the following:

a. **الَّذِي** *who, which, that*, originally a demonstrative compounded with the article (hence the connective Alif); it is inflected in the following manner:

	Masc.	Fem.
Sing.	الَّذِي	الَّتِي
Dual	Nom. الَّذَانِ	الَّتَانِ
	Gen. Acc. الَّذَيْنِ	الَّتَيْنِ
Plur.	الَّذِينَ	الَّلَاتِي

b. **مَنْ** (without inflexion): *the one who; one who* (also Plu.)

مَا (without inflection) = *the one which; something which*.

c. **أَيُّ**, fem. **أَيَّةٌ** (inflected in the Sing.) = *the one who* (mostly before the nominative); also compounded

with the preceding أَيُّمَنْ = *every one who; whoever*;
 أَيُّمَا = *whichever*.

§ 14. The interrogative pronouns are:

مَنْ *who?* (mas. and fem.)?

مَا *what*, frequently strengthened by the addition
 of the demonstrative ذَا : ذَا *what then?*

أَيُّ, fem. أَيَّة *what sort of?*

REM. مَنْ is only inflected (like أَيُّ) when it stands
 absolutely: its inflection is as follows:

	Masc.	Fem.
Sing. Nom.	مَنْو, Gen. مَنِى, Acc. مَنَا	مَنْت, مَنَّة
Dual Nom.	مَنَان, Gen. Acc. مَنَيْن*	مَنْتَيْن, مَنَّان
Plur. Nom.	مَنُون, Gen. Acc. مَنَيْن	مَنَات

After a preposition مَا in shortened to مَ, e. g. لِمَ *why?* The interrogative word كَمْ *how many?* is connected with the interrogative pronoun مَا. ✓

Chapter II.

The Verb.

§ 15. The great majority of Arabic verbs has three radicals; a small minority has four radicals. The root

*) This and the following are pausal forms with rejected final vowel.

form, according to which the verbs are arranged in grammar and dictionary, is the 3. Pers. Sing. Perfect. The verbal, and especially the nominal forms are named throughout after the paradigm of the verb **فَعَلَ** (to do).

REM. All Arabic dictionaries arrange the nominal and verbal derivatives under this root form; one must therefore, in order to find these three radicals easily, pay strict attention to the consonants, which in nominal and verbal formations are added to the stem as prefixes, affixes or infixes.

§ 16. From the root form, or the so-called first stem, other stems are derived by regular changes: these stems are named either by the paradigm of **فَعَلَ** (e. g. the stem *ifta'ala*), or usually by numbers (e. g. the eighth stem, so also in the dictionary denoted simply by VIII). The following stems, the order of which is to be carefully noted, are the most usual:

I فَعَلَ	IV أَفْعَلَّ	VII اِنْفَعَلَ	X اِسْتَفْعَلَ
II فَعَّلَ	V تَفَعَّلَ	VIII اِفْتَعَلَ	XI اِفْعَالَ
III فَاعَلَ	VI تَفَاعَلَ	IX اِفْعَلَّ	

REM. No. IX and especially No. XI belong to the rarer forms; still more rare are XII **اِفْعَوْعَلَ**,

XIII اِفْعَوْلَ, XIV اِفْعَنْلَلَ, XV اِفْعَنْلَى. — The derived forms in use in each verb, and the change of meaning in these derived forms—are given in the dictionaries under each individual verb.

§ 17. In the majority of cases the root form I is pronounced فَعَلَ, e. g. قَتَلَ *to kill*, alongside of this, in most verbs of intransitive meaning, occurs the form فَعِلَ (cf. כָּיִיד), e. g. مَرَضَ *to be ill*; also the form فَعِّلَ (cf. קָנַח), this latter form has always an intransitive meaning, e. g. حَسُنَ *to be beautiful*. Sometimes one of the forms فَعِلَ or فَعِّلَ occurs in the same verb alongside of فَعَلَ; sometimes both forms فَعِلَ and فَعِّلَ occur in the same verb.

REM. The arabic verb frequently expresses that a person wishes to perform an action, or allows it to be performed; thus, e. g. قَتَلَهُ *he killed him* can also mean "*he wished to kill him*", and صَرَبَ عُنُقَهُ "*he cut off his head*" (prop. neck) may also mean "*he caused his head to be cut off*."

§ 18. The II. stem فَعَّلَ (corresponding to the Piel of Hebrew) denotes in general a greater intensity of the action expressed by the verb; this intensive

force can be referred to the subject, object, or accessory circumstances, e. g. قَتَلَ *to kill several, to massacre*, (with reference to the object). Most usually however this form is causative, e. g. عَلَّمَ *to know*, عَلَّمَ *to cause to know, to teach*; also declarative, e. g. كَذَبَ *to lie*, كَذَّبَ *to consider, to declare to be, a liar*; and denominative جَيَّشَ *to collect an army* (جَيْش).

§ 19. The III. stem فَاعَلَ expresses the desire, or the attempt, to perform the action on a person, to influence a person or thing, e. g. قَتَلَ *to kill*, قَاتَلَ *to seek to kill, to fight*; كَتَبَ *to write*, كَاتَبَ *to correspond with one*; the latter is then transitive with accusative of the person.

§ 20. The IV. stem أَفْعَلَ (the Hif'il of the Hebrew) has a causative meaning, e. g. صَلَحَ *to be in good condition*, أَصْلَحَ *to bring into good condition*. Very often in this form there occur denominatives with a concealed transitive meaning, which from our point of view are apparently intransitive, and express the idea of action in a definite direction, e. g. أَحْسَنَ *to do good*; frequently moreover this form is used for verbs, which contain the idea of going to a place, of

entering or coming to a period of time or a condition, e. g. *أَغْرَبَ* to go to the West, *أَصْبَحَ* to enter into the time of morning, to do something in the morning, *أَشْرَفَ* to come to the top.

§ 21. The V. stem *تَفَعَّلَ* (the Hebrew Hithpa'el), a sort of middle, is derived from the second stem and has a reflexive (according to circumstances also a reciprocal) meaning, e. g. *تَكَبَّرَ* to make one'sself great, *تَعَلَّمَ* to allow oneself to be taught, to learn (Scotch "to learn one'sself"). Sometimes a verb in the V. form expresses the idea of, acting the part of, giving oneself out as, e. g. *تَنَبَّأَ* to give oneself out for a prophet, to act the part of a prophet.

§ 22. The VI. stem *تَفَاعَلَ*, derived from the III stem, is the reflexive form of this III. stem, and has a reflexive or reciprocal meaning, e. g. *تَجَاسَرَ* to prove oneself clever, sharp, *تَقَاتَلَ* to fight one another.

§ 23. The VII. stem *اِنْفَعَلَ* (the Hebrew Niph'al, with connective Alif after § 6 a), mostly derived from the I. stem, is a middle or reflexive form of this I. stem, e. g. *كَسَرَ* to break, *اِنْكَسَرَ* to go to pieces, to break up.

§ 24. The VIII. stem *اِفْتَعَلَ* (with connective Alif § 6 a) is likewise a middle and reflexive form, for the most part of the I. stem, e. g. *اِعْتَرَضَ* to oppose one'sself; sometimes also with reciprocal meaning, e. g. *اِخْتَصَمَ* to quarrel with one another.

REM. In the case of roots beginning with *ص*, *ض*, *ط*, *ظ* the *ت* of the VIII. stem is changed to the emphatic *ط*, and in the case of dentals is even assimilated to the first radical, e. g. *اِصْطَبَعَ* instead of *اِظْتَبَعَ* of *صَبَعَ*; *اِظْلَمَ* or *اِطْلَمَ* instead of *اِظْتَلَمَ* from *ظْلَمَ*; likewise *ت* is sometimes assimilated to a preceding *ث*, e. g. *اِثْبَتَ* or *اِتَّبَتَ* from *ثَبَتَ* prop. *اِثْتَبَتَ*; after *د*, *ذ*, *ز* the *ت* is changed to the soft *د*, e. g. *اِزْدَادَ* instead of *اِرْتَادَ* from *زَادَ*; *اِدَّرَكَ* instead of *اِدْتَرَكَ*.

§ 25. The IX. stem *اِفْعَلَ* (likewise the XI. *اِفْعَالٌ*, both with connective Alif) are used of verbs which expressed the possession of inherent qualities, or bodily deformities, e. g. from the stem *صَفَرٌ*: *اِصْفَرَّ* to be yellow; from the stem *عَوَّرَ*: *اِعْوَرَ* to be one eyed.

§ 26. The X. stem *اِسْتَفْعَلَ* (with connective Alif) is in the first instance a reflexive of the IV. stem *اَفْعَلَ*, e. g. from the stem *وحش* IV. *اَوْحَشَ* to *sadden*, X. *اِسْتَوْحَشَ* to *sadden one'sself*, to *make one'sself sad*. Very frequently the X. stem denotes also the wishing or begging something for one'sself, e. g. from *اغفر* to *pardon*, X. *اِسْتَغْفَرَ* to *beg for pardon*; or to consider a thing to be so and so, e. g. from *وجب* to *be necessary*, IV. *اَوْجَبَ* to *make necessary*, X. *اِسْتَوْجَبَ* to *consider something necessary*.

§ 27. The stems with four radicals are denoted in the nominal and verbal forms by the paradigm *فَعَّلَلَ* (i. e. with the help of a fourth radical added to *فَعَّلَ*), and have two chief forms, of which the first corresponds to the II. stem of the trilateral verb, the second *تَفَعَّلَلَ* corresponds to the V. stem of the trilateral verb, e. g. *كَبَّكَ* to *throw down*, *تَكَبَّكَ* to *fall down*.

REM. The stems III. *اِفْعَنْلَلَ* and IV. *اِفْعَلَّلَ* (the latter corresponding to the IX. stem of the trilateral verb) are rare, e. g. *اِطْمَأَنَّ* to *be quiet*, from a stem. *طَمَأَنَ*.

§ 28. A *Passive* stands alongside of the *Active*: it is formed in the Perfect in such a manner that the series *u-i-a* (*i* with the second, and *a* with the third radical) takes the place of the *a* vowels, e. g. Act. I.: **فَعَلَ**, Pass.: **فُعِلَ**; the additional syllables of the derived forms likewise receive the vowel *u*, e. g. Pass. V **تُفَعَّلُ**, VIII **أُفْتَعَلُ** (with connective Alif).

§ 29. The Arabic verb has two principal tenses, a *Perfect*, which in general represents a finished action: and an *Imperfect*, which in general represents an unfinished action. The Imperfect is formed by the addition of the prefix **يَ** *ya* in the Act. of the I., V., VI., VII., VIII., IX. and X. forms; and of the prefix **يُ** *yu* in the Act. of the II., III., IV. and in the Pass. of all forms. The second radical receives in the I. stem the vowel *u*, *i* or *a*, which is specially mentioned in the dictionary in the case of each verb (e. g. Imp. *u*). Those Verbs, which in the Perf. have the form **فَعَلَ** (with *i* vowel), as well as all Passives, have *a* in the second radical of the Imperf., thus Imperf. Act. **يَفْعَلُ**; Pass. **يُفْعَلُ**. As regards the derived stems the second radical always receives *i* (with the exception of the V. and VI. stems, which have *a*), e. g. Imperf. II. **يُفْعِلُ** but V. **يَتَفَعَّلُ**.

§ 30. In the Imperfect different moods are distinguished, viz. *Indicative*, *Subjunctive* and *Jussive*. They are distinguished as follows; in the Indicative the last radical, when it closes the word, is always pronounced with *u*, e. g. *يَفْعَلُ*, Imperf. III. *يَفْعَالُ*; in the Subjunctive with *a*, e. g. *يَفْعَلْ*; and in the Jussive is left without a vowel, e. g. *يَفْعَلْ*. Besides these there is a double *modus energicus*, which is formed by affixing the syllables *anna* or *an* to the Imperfect, thus *يَفْعَلَنَّ* or *يَفْعَلَنْ*.

REM. As the *modus energicus* is of relatively rare occurrence, it is given in the Tables only in the paradigms of the usual strong verb. In the remaining verbs it can be easily formed after the analogy of these.

§ 31. The Imperative agrees in vocalisation and ending with the Jussive; except that there is no prefixed *ي*. In the Imperative of the I. stem, when the first consonant has no vowel, an auxiliary vowel is in all cases prefixed (i. e. with a connective Alif); this vowel however vanishes in pronunciation when the word no longer stands alone, e. g. *إِفْعَلْ* but *قَالَ أَخْرَجْ*, likewise in the VII.—X. stems. The Imperative has the same energetic by-forms as the Imperfect.

REM. In the Imperative of the I. stem *u* is used as the auxiliary vowel if the second radical has *u*, e. g. اُقْتُلْ; on the other hand *i* is used, if the second radical has *a* or *i*, e. g. اِرْزُبْ, اِفْعَلْ.

§ 32. In the Perfect, Imperfect and Imperative besides Singular and Plural there are also Dual forms of the second and third persons. The verbs are inflected by the addition of modified and shortened forms of the personal pronouns or nominal Dual and Plural endings (cf. on the endings *āni* and *ūna* of the the Imperf. Indic. § 53 a) to the stem forms فَعَّلْ and يَفْعَلْ. These latter endings, like the ending *īna* of the II. Pers. Fem. Sing. Imperf., reject the syllable *na* in the Subjunctive, Jussive, and Imperative. The *l*, which is found after the final *و* in the Perf. and in these forms of the Imperfect and Imperative, has no effect on the pronunciation cf. § 2 e — In the Imperfect in place of the prefix *ي* of the 3. Masc., the prefix *ي* is used for the forms of the 2. Pers., and those of the 3. Fem. (except the 3. Fem. Plu); for the 1. Sing. *أ*, is used, and *ي* for the 1. Plu.

REM. In the Imperfect of the derived stems, which have the prefix *ي* (V. and VI.), an Aphæresis

of the personal prefix ت is sometimes found, e. g. تَتَفَعَّلُ instead of تَفَعَّلُ .

§ 33. The participles—the active is generally called *nomen agentis* the passive *nomen patientis*—are in all derived stems formed by the prefixing of the syllable م *mu*; in the Act. the second radical has *i*, in the Pass. *a*; e. g. II. Part. Act. مُفَعِّلٌ ; Pass. مَفْعُولٌ . The Part. Act. and Pass. of the I. stem فَاعِلٌ and مَفْعُولٌ are to be specially noted.

REM. The Arabic participles as such express no idea of time; hence e. g. قَاتِلٌ can mean also, *one who has killed*; مَقْتُولٌ *one who will, or should be killed*

§ 34 a. The Infinitive (*nomen verbi*) of the I. stem has very various forms, and is therefore in the dictionaries given in the case of each separate verb. One of the most common forms is فَعْلٌ , e. g. قَتَلَ *to kill, killing*; the Infinitives of the verbs فَعَلَ (§ 28) are as a rule فَعْلٌ , e. g. from غَضِبَ : غَضِبٌ *a being angry*. The form فُعُولٌ is also frequent. Infinitives with prefixed م are likewise found, e. g. دُخُولٌ or مَدْخَلٌ (for several forms from the same verb often occur together, sometimes with modifications of meaning) from دَخَلَ *to enter*.

b. The Infinitive of the II. stem is تَفْعِيلٌ or تَفْعِيلَةٌ (the latter form always with verbs ult. ى); the Infinitive of the III. stem is فِعَالٌ or مُفَاعَلَةٌ (the latter form is like the Part. Pass. with the fem. ending). The Infinitives of the IV., VII., VIII., IX. and X. stems are formed by the insertion of an *ā* before the last radical: before this *ā* all other *ā*'s of the Perf. become *ī*'s, IV. اِنْفَعَالٌ, VII. اِنْفَعَالٌ (with connective Alif), VIII. اِنْفَعَالٌ (id.), IX. اِنْعِلَالٌ (id.), X. اِسْتِفْعَالٌ (id.) The Infinitives of the V. and VI. stems take *u* after the second radical, V. تَفَعُّلٌ, VI. تَفَاعُلٌ.

REM. The Arabic Infinitives contain no temporal idea, and can stand equally well either in an active or in a passive sense, e. g. قَتَلَ *a killing*, or *a being killed*.

The conjugation of the quadriliteral verbs is shown in the table of paradigms No. III.

§ 35. The verba mediæ geminatæ, i. e. those verbs, the second and third radicals of which are identical, e. g. فَرَر, (cf. the table of paradigms No. IV—VII) must also be reckoned among the common strong verbs.

a. A contraction of the last two radicals occurs in all those cases, in which the first, second, and third radical are pronounced with short vowels, e. g. فَرَّ from فَرَر (uncontracted verbs of the forms فَعَلَ and فَعَلْ sometimes occur); 3. S. Imperf. VII. يَنْفَر from يَنْفَرُ; likewise if after two short vowels the third radical has a long vowel, e. g. 3. Dual Masc. Perf. فَرَّا from فَرَرَا, in most cases when the first radical has an ā, e. g. 3. Perf. III. فَارَّ from فَارَر (in Pass. however فَوَرَر).

b. If the first radical is vowelless, and the second is furnished with a short vowel, contraction takes place, and the vowel of the second radical is thrown backward on to the first, e. g. 3. S. Imperf. Act. يَفَر instead of يَفَرُّ; Pass. يُفَر for يُفَرُّ; on the other hand contraction does not take place, when the vowel of the second radical is long, e. g. فَرَار.

c. If the third radical is vowelless, contraction does not take place, e. g. فَرَرَتْ.

REM. 1. In the Jussive (يَفَرُّ) and Imperative (اِفْرِ) contracted forms occur, notwithstanding the

The weak verbs.

§ 37. The weak verbal stems are those which have a , or a ى as first, second, or third radical.


REM. For the convenience of the learner, the old view is retained in the remarks following, viz, that these radicals , and ى had originally in all cases the value of consonants.

§ 38. The *verba primæ* , and ى (cf. Table of Paradigms No. VIII) differ from the strong verb in the following points:

a. In the Imperfect and Imperativ I those verbs primæ , which have *i* (cf. ילד) with the second radical, reject the first radical, e. g. وَلَدَ to bear, bring forth, Imperf. يَلِدُ, Imper. لِدْ.

Some verbs it is true, which have *a* in the Imperf. with the second radical, nevertheless reject the و, e. g. وَضَعَ to lay, Imperf. يَضَعُ; likewise وَقَعَ to fall, وَهَبَ to give, &c. (see the dictionary).

b. و in is changed to ى; uy to ū, e. g. Inf. IV from وَقَعَ (prop. اَوْقَاعٌ) = اِيقَاعٌ; Imperf. IV from يَقِظُ to be watchful (prop. يُيَقِظُ) = يُوقِظُ.

c. In the VIII. stem the first radical is assimilated to the following ت, e. g. from وَعَدَ to promise, اَتَعَدَّ instead of اَوْتَعَدَّ.  2.13784

REM. The same rules are in force for the formation of nouns, e. g. from وَعَدَ Imperf. I يَعِدُ the noun عِدَّة is formed; from وَدَعَ to leave, allow, Imperf. يَدَعُ, the noun دَعَا; from وَلَدَ the noun مِيلَاد (for مَوْلَاد) time of birth.

§ 39. The *Verba mediæ* و and ی vocalise their second radical in the I., IV., VII., VIII. and X. stems according to the following rules:

a. If the third radical has a vowel, there arises

ā from و	e. g.	قَالَ	from	قَوَلَ	(3. Perf. I)
” يَ	”	سَارَ	”	سَيَّرَ	(3. Perf. I)
” وَ	”	يَخَافُ	”	يَخَوِّفُ	(3. Imperf. I)
” يَ	”	يُسَارُ	”	يُسَيِّرُ	(3. Imperf. Pass. I)
” وَ	”	يَنْقَالُ	”	يَنْقُولُ	(3. Imperf. VII)
” يَ	”	يَسْتَارُ	”	يَسْتَوِّرُ	(3. Imperf. VIII).

If however in these cases the third radical is vowelless, the ā is shortened to ă; only in the Perf. I. وَ and يَ become ŭ and ĭ respectively (not a as in

نَظَرٍ), e. g. 2. Perf. I قُلْتُ instead of قَوْلْتُ, سِرْتُ instead of سَيْرْتُ (so خَافَ from خَوْفَ, 2. Perf. I however خَفْتُ instead of خَوْفْتُ); on the other hand according to the above rule, 2. Perf. IV أَقُلْتُ instead of أَقَوْلْتُ, 3. Jussive Pass. I يُسِرْ from يُسَارْ (يُسِيرُ), &c.

REM. The Jussive of the verb كَانَ *med.* و (to exist, to be) can reject the *n* in those forms in which no inflectional affixes are added, e. g. يَكُنْ alongside of يَكُنْ.

b. If the third radical has a vowel there arises

\bar{u} from وُ e. g. يَقُولُ from يَقُولُ (3. Imperf. I)
 " " مَقُولُ " مَقُولُ (Part. Pass. I).

If the third radical is vowelless, \bar{u} is shortened to *u*, e. g. قُلْ 2. Imper. I.

c. If the third radical has a vowel, there arises

\bar{i} from يُ e. g. يَسِيرُ from يَسِيرُ (3. Imperf. I)
 " " يُقِيلُ " يُقُولُ (3. Imperf. IV)
 " " سِيرَ " سِيرَ (3. Perf. Pass. I)
 " " قِيلَ " قُولَ (3. Perf. Pass. I)
 " " مَبِيعَ " مَبِيعَ (Part. Pass. I).

If the third radical is vowelless the *z̄* is shortened to *z̄*, e. g. *يَسِرُ* 3. Jussive I from *يَسِيرُ*; 2. Perf. Pass. I from *قِيلَتْ*.

d. *اَوِ* and *اِ* become in the Partic. Act. I *اِوِ*, e. g. *قَائِلٌ* instead of *قَاوِلٌ* (on Medda cf. § 7).

e. The Infinitives of the IV. and X. forms receive the fem. ending to compensate for the shortening, e. g. *إِقَالَةٌ* instead of *إِقَالٌ* from *إِقْوَالٌ*.

REM. The above rules a—c are in full force also for the nominal derivatives from verbal stems *mediæ* , and ى, e. g. *مَقَالٌ* from *مَقُولٌ*, *دَوَارٌ* from *دَوْرٌ*, *بَاعَةٌ* from *بَيْعَةٌ*. Likewise according to c *مَسِيرٌ* arises from *مَسِيرٌ*; *مِيْتَةٌ* from *مَوْتَةٌ*; *ثِيَابٌ* from *ثَوَابٌ*.

§ 40. In those verbs, which have , or ى as *third radical*, these half-consonants are in many cases vocalised, or altogether rejected. Moreover the verbs *ultimæ* , pass over into verbs *ultimæ* ى in all derived stems (e. g. 3. Perf. II *غَرَى*), also in the Partic. Act. I, the Perf. and Imperf. Pass. I (*غُرِيَ*), likewise in those verbs which have the form *فَعِلَ* (e. g. (*رَضِيَ* for *رَضَوَ*). The following rules are observed in the case of these stems:

a. َو *awa* and ى *aya* become \bar{a} (cf. § 39 a); in the case of verbs ult. َو this \bar{a} is written with ا, e. g. غَزَا from غَزَوَ, in the case of verbs ult. ى this \bar{a} , when it is final, is written with ا (cf. § 2 d), e. g. رَمَى (with suffix however generally رَمَاهُ): 3. Imperf. Subj.: يَرْضَى instead of يَرْضَى. The 3. fem. Sing. Perf., which is shortened, forms an exception, e. g. غَزَتْ where غَرَاتٌ from غَزَوْتُ would have been expected (similarly also the 3. fem. Dual غَرَتَا).

b. Apart from the verbs, which in the Perf. have فَعِلَ, and in the Imperf. يَفْعَلُ (cf. § 17), the verbs ultimæ َو take the vowel *u* on the second radical of the Imperf. I, the verbs ultimæ ى take the vowel *i* in the Imperf. I. The language however does not tolerate َو *nu* and ى *yu* as final syllables after a preceding vowel, but changes

وَ *unu* into \bar{u} e. g. يَغْزُو for يَغْزُو from غَزَا .

رَمَى " يَرْمَى " يَرْمَى " يَرْمَى " يَرْمَى

رَضَى " يَرْضَى " يَرْضَى " يَرْضَى " يَرْضَى

In the Jussive and Imperative these long final syllables are changed to short ones, e. g. Jussive يَغْزُ, اِرْضَ, اِرْضَ; Imper. اُرْضَ, اُرْضَ, اُرْضَ.

c. The endings *ū* (3. masc. Plu. Perf. cf. § 32), *ina* (2. fem. Sing. Imperf.), and *ūna* (3. and 2. masc. Plu. Imperf.), which begin with a vowel; as well as the endings *ī* and *ū* shortened from the two latter, which are used for the Subjunctive, Jussive and Imperative, are by rejection of the last radical added directly to the second, when this has another vowel than *a*; if the second radical has *a* these suffixes combine with it to a diphthong, e. g. 3. Pl. Perf. غَزَوْا instead of غَزَوُوا, رَمَوْا instead of رَمَيُوا but رَضُوا instead of رَضِيُوا; 3. Pl. Imperf. يَغْزُونَ instead of يَغْزَوُونَ; يَرْمُونَ instead of يَرْمِيُونَ; يَرْضُونَ instead of يَرْضِيُونَ.

REM. The above rules hold good for the formation of the participles and the Infinitive, as also for the formation and the inflection of nouns—the following should be noted here:

a. After a vowelless consonant ^سو, ^سو and ^سي remain unchanged, e. g. ^سوْ algazwu, ^سوْ gazwun, ^سيْ arramyu, ^سيْ ramyun.

b. After an *a* or *i* vowel ى (which is chiefly to be considered) coalesces into its corresponding long vowel, e. g. الرَامِى (ar-rāmī) from الرَامِى (al-murammā) from الرَامِى (cf. above rule b); ى iyun becomes ین in, ى ayun becomes ան; in the case of the latter, notwithstanding the shortness of the vowel, ى is orthographically retained in writing, e. g. Part. Act. I رَامِ rāmin from رَامِى muramman from مَرَمِى; so also هُدَى hudan instead of هُدَى. — Likewise from عَصِر is formed عَصَا 'aşan; without the nunation أَلْعَصَا.

c. From ى arises ى and from this — according to the rule Rem. b, e. g. Inf. V after the form تَفْعَلْ تَرَمِى = تَرَمِى = تَرَمِ. — ى maintains its position, e. g. Part. Pass. I from غَزَا after the form مَفْعُولْ مَغْرُوزْ for which مَغْرُوزْ is written. — ى on the other hand in the same form becomes ى written ى e. g. مَرَمِى = مَرَمِى.

d. The syllables ى and ى (similarly also ى and ى) pass over into ʔ, ʔ after a preceding ā, the half-vowel being changed to Hamza, e. g. Inf. IV اَرْمَا instead of

إِرْمَائِي (on Medda cf. § 7 b); similarly without the Nunation أَلَا رَمَاءَ; سَرَاءَ instead of سَرَاءُ.

e. The inflectional endings *ūna* and *ina* of nouns (cf. § 53 a) are added to nouns ending in *in* and *an* (Rem. b) in accordance with the rules given under c, e. g. رَامِ Plu. Nom. رَامُونَ, Gen. Acc. رَامِينَ; on the other hand مُرْمِي Nom. Pl. مُرْمُونَ, Gen. Acc. مُرْمِينَ cf. the Table of Paradigms No. XX.

§ 41. Of doubly weak verbs the following are to be chiefly considered:

a. Verba primæ و and ultimæ ي, e. g. وَقَى, Imperf. according to § 38 a and 40 b يَقِي, Jussive يَقِ, Imper. properly قِ, instead of which قَدْ is written.

b. The verb رَأَى to see, which in the Imperfect elides the Hamza and throws back its vowel *a* on to the first radical, thus يَرَى *yarā* instead of يَرَأَى *yar'ā*, 3. Plu. يَرُونَ, Imperat. رَ or رْ, fem. رِي. Similarly the IV. form, meaning to show, runs أَرَى instead of أَرَأَى, Imperf. يُرَى instead of يُرَأَى; Perf. Pass. أَرِيَ instead of أَرَعِيَ, &c.

c. The verb حَى to live, prop. حَيَى; Imperf. يَحْيَا (cf. Rem. to § 2 d) after the analogy of verbs ult. ي,

or *يَحْيَى* after the analogy of verbs mediæ geminatæ:
Perf. X *اِسْتَكْبَى* or *اِسْتَكْبَا* and alongside these forms
also contracted *اِسْتَكَى* (*to be ashamed*).

§ 42. *لَيْسَ* *there is not* (compounded of the negative *لَا* and the unused noun *أَيْسَ* *يَسَّ*) is inflected as follows:

	Sing.	Dual	Plural
3. masc.	لَيْسَ	لَيْسَا	لَيْسُوا
3. fem.	لَيْسَتْ	لَيْسَتَا	لَيْسْنَ
2. masc.	لَسْتَ	لَسْتُمَا	لَسْتُمْ
2. fem.	لَسْتِ		لَسْتُنَّ
1.	لَسْتُ		لَسْنَا

§ 43. The verbs of praise and blame *فَعِمَ* *to be good*, *بُئِسَ* *to be bad*, which are seldom conjugated, are of irregular form.

§ 44. The so-called forms of admiration are treated by the Arabs as special forms; they are properly 3. Perfects, and 2. Imperatives of the IV. stem, which have received a peculiar meaning, e. g. *مَا أَفْضَلَ زَيْدًا* prop. *what has made Zaid excellent?* or *أَفْضِلْ زَيْدًا* prop. *make Zaid excellent!* which mean, *how excellent is Zaid!*—The verba mediæ , and *ي*

take the strong formation in these forms, e. g.
 هَذَا مَا أَهْوَنَ هَذَا *how easy this is!*

§ 45. The addition of pronominal suffixes (§ 11 b) alters the form of the verbs only to a slight extent. An ا, standing after وِ u, falls away, e. g. قَتَلُوهُ; the 2. fem. Sing. Perf. lengthens its final vowel e. g. ضَرَبْتِنِي. The ending تُمْ of the 2. Plu. Perf. becomes قَتَلْتُمُو, e. g. قَتَلْتُمُونِي compounded of قَتَلْتُمْ and the suffix of the 1. Sing.; the ending una of the Imperf. sometimes becomes ū, e. g. يَقْتُلُونَكَ or يَقْتُلُوكَ 3. Plu. Imperf. with the suffix of the 2. Sing. fem.

§ 46. a. When the object consisting of a personal pronoun is to be placed before the verb for the sake of emphasis, the nominal suffix added to the nominal sign of the accusative أَيَّا (أَيَّا, أَيَّا; أَيَّا with the suffix of the 1. Sing. is أَيَّائِي) is used instead of the verbal suffix immediately connected with the verb, e. g. أَيَّائِكَ نَعْبُدُ *to thee we pray.*

b. The Arabic verb can have two suffixes connected with it at the same time; in this case the pronoun of the first person precedes that of the second and third, the pronoun of the second person precedes that

of the third, e. g. *أَعْطَانِي* *he gave it me*; frequently however instead of two suffixes the periphrasis with *إِيَّا* is used especially when both suffixes are of the third person, e. g. *زَوَّجَهُ إِيَّاهَا* *he let him marry her*.

Chapter III.

T h e N o u n .

a. The formation of nouns.

§ 47. The Arabic nouns (substantive and adjective) are either primitive, e. g. *قَرْنٌ* *ox*, *رَجْلٌ* *foot*, or derivative, i. e. derived either 1) from verbal stems, or 2) from other nouns. To the former, the deverbalia, the participles and infinitives, mentioned already in §§ 33 and 34, belong. Besides the participles there are a number of verbal adjectives of which the following forms are to be particularly noted:

a. The form *فَعِيلٌ*, which occurs in a passive and in an active sense, e. g. *قَتِيلٌ* *killed*, *شَهِيدٌ* *a witness*, *خَصِيمٌ* *one, who strives with another*, (in the sense of *مُخَاصِمٌ* Part. Act. III).

REM. Nouns of the form ^سفَعِيل, derived from verbal stems med. و and ی, modify this form to ^سفَعِيل, e. g. ^سسَيِّد *lord* instead of ^سسَوِيْد (from which in the first place ^سسَيِّد would arise).

b. ^سفَعُول, e. g. ^سكَذُوب *lying* (frequently an intensive form).

c. ^فأَفْعَل, this form denotes colours and bodily defects, e. g. ^فأَصْفَر *yellow*; ^فأَعْمَى for ^فأَعْمَى (cf. § 40 Rem. b) *blind*.

As intensive forms the following may be noted:

d. ^سفَاعِل intensive form to ^سفَاعِل and other verbal adjectives, e. g. ^سكَذَّاب *lying*; this form serves at the same time to denote *nomina opificum*, e. g. ^سنَجَّار *joiner*.

e. Very frequently the form ^فأَفْعَل is derived from adjectives in the sense of an elative (generally so called because it includes both comparative and superlative), e. g. ^فحَسَن *beautiful*, elative ^فأَحْسَن *more beautiful, most beautiful*; ^فصَغِير *small, young*, elative ^فأَصْغَر *smaller, 'younger, smallest, youngest*; ^فعَلِي *high*, elative ^فأَعْلَى *higher, highest*. The elatives, when they stand as predicates, do not change their form in

regard to gender and number (e. g. أَنْتِ أَحَقُّ بِهِ ^ف ^ع *thou [fem.] art more worthy of it*): in the sense of superlatives they are mostly determinate (§ 56 cf. the French "le plus"), in the sense of comparatives indeterminate, and are then construed with the preposition مِنْ (in the sense of our "than").

§ 48. Further to the nomina deverbalia the following especially belong:

a. The nouns of place and time formed with the prefix مَ *ma*, e. g. مَكْتَبٌ ^س *the place for writing, the school*; مَقَامٌ ^س (from مَقُومٌ after § 39 Rem.) *the spot where one stands, place*; مَرْعَى ^س (from مَرْعَى after § 40 Rem. b) *the place for pasturage, the pasture*; also with the fem. ending, e. g. مَقْبُرَةٌ ^س *place for burial*.

REM. Nomina loci et temporis of the derived stems have the form of the Participle Passive, e. g. مُتَوَضَّأٌ ^س (from the V. stem) *the place, where the ritual washing is performed*; مَقَامٌ ^س (from اقام IV to place) *the spot where something is placed*.

b. The nomina instrumenti, formed with the prefix مِ, e. g. مِجْلَبٌ ^س *milk-pail* from حَلَبَ to milk; مِفْتَاحٌ ^س *key* from فَتَحَ to open.

c. The nomina speciei after the form *فِعْلَةٌ*, e. g. *كِتَبَةٌ* *the style and manner of writing, the writing* ("the hand.")

§ 49. To the denominatives the following classes of nouns specially belong:

a. Those nouns which are derived from others by means of the ending *مِي* (corresponding to the hebr. *יָ*, fem. *יָה* beside *יָה*) and following the Arabic grammarians are called relative (adjectival) nouns, nouns of relation, e. g. *أَرْضِيّ* *belonging* (related) *to the earth* (*أَرْض*), *earthy*; *شَامِيّ* *belonging to* *شَام* *Syria*, *a Syrian*. On the addition of this ending the feminine termination is rejected, e. g. *مَكِّيّ* (from *مَكَّة*) *an inhabitant of Mecca*; certain changes sometimes occur in the vowels of the words, e. g. *مَدَنِيّ* *an inhabitant of Medina* from *الْمَدِينَةُ* *Medina*. By the addition of the feminine ending (§ 51a) to these nomina relativa, feminines, e. g. *شَامِيَّة* *a Syrian woman*, more frequently however abstract nouns are formed, e. g. *إِلَهِية* *divinity* from *إِلَهِ* *divine* from *إِلَهِ* *God*; *جَاهِلِيَّة* *heathenism* from *جَاهِلِيّ* *heathenish* from *جَاهِل* *ignorant*.

REM. Formations of nomina relativa with the ending ـِ , are rare, e. g. from يَمَن^s *Yemen*, يَمَانِ (for يَمَانِي^s).

b. Nomina deminutiva after the form فُعَيْلٌ^s are derived from trilateral nouns, e. g. عُبَيْدٌ^s *a little slave* from عَبْدٌ^s *a slave*. From quadrilateral nouns the form runs فُعَيْلٌ^s , e. g. عُقَيْرِبٌ^s *a small scorpion* from عَقْرَبٌ^s ; صَوَّجِبٌ^s deminutive from صَاحِبٌ^s *companion*. Proper names also often have the deminutive form.

b) The Gender of Nouns.

§ 50. The Arabic has two genders, a masculine and a feminine. A number of words are sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine (i. e. their gender is common). Words, which denote feminine beings, collectives, lands, towns, winds, members of the body occurring in pairs &c. are without a feminine ending essentially feminine: the gender is always marked in the dictionary.

§ 51. The following terminations are added as outward signs of the feminine:

a. most usually the ending ة^{f} *atun* (or ة^{f} *atu*), e. g. $\text{قَاتِلَةٌ}^{\text{f}}$ *killing* fem. from $\text{قَاتَلَ}^{\text{m}}$; $\text{مَلِكَةٌ}^{\text{f}}$ *queen* from مَلَكَ^{m} ; $\text{فَتَاةٌ}^{\text{f}}$ *maiden* from فَتَى^{m} (§ 40 Rem. b) *youth*. Many words are found only with the feminine ending, e. g. $\text{جَنَّةٌ}^{\text{f}}$ *park, garden, orchard*.

REM. a. There are however a number of masculine nouns with this feminine ending, e. g. $\text{خَلِيفَةٌ}^{\text{f}}$ *Chalif*, $\text{طَلْحَةُ}^{\text{f}}$ *Talḥa* (a masculine proper name). On the other hand there are feminine nouns, which, because they are essentially feminine, require no feminine termination, e. g. $\text{عَائِرٌ}^{\text{f}}$ *barren* (of a woman).

REM. b. The feminine ending ة^{f} is sometimes added to nouns of general meaning to denote a particular, single instance (nomen unitatis), e. g. $\text{ذَهَبَةٌ}^{\text{f}}$ *a piece of gold, a gold coin* from ذَهَبٌ^{m} *gold*; $\text{حَمَامَةٌ}^{\text{f}}$ *a dove* from $\text{حَمَامٌ}^{\text{m}}$ *a flight of doves*. Abstract nouns of singular occurrence are likewise formed by the ending ة^{f} , e. g. $\text{قَعْدَةٌ}^{\text{f}}$ *a sitting down once* from قَعَدَ^{m} *to seat one'sself, sit*.

b. The ending ى^{f} *ā*, e. g. $\text{كُبْرَى}^{\text{f}}$ fem. of كَبَرٌ^{m} *greater* (relative according to § 47 e); $\text{ذِكْرَى}^{\text{f}}$ *remembrance*; $\text{دُنْيَا}^{\text{f}}$ (§ 2 Rem.) *world*; أُولَى^{f} fem. of $\text{أَوَّلٌ}^{\text{m}}$ *first*.

c. The ending $\text{ـَا} \text{ } \bar{a}'u$, e. g. صَفْرَاء from أَصْفَر (adj. after § 47 c); حَرَآء desert.

c. *The Inflection of Nouns.*

§ 52. The Arabic has three numbers; Singular, Dual and Plural. There are two kinds of Plural, the usual Plural proper called also *Pluralis sanus* (whole or perfect plural) or outer plural; and the collective plural, called also inner, or broken plural (*Pluralis fractus*; cf. § 62 fol.). At present only the former comes under consideration.—Three cases are distinguished; Nominative, Genitive, Accusative.

§ 53. a. The following endings are used in the formation of the Dual and Plural:

Dual Nom.	ـَانِ (cf. § 32)
„ Gen. and Acc.	ـَيْنِ (cf. ٢١٠)
Plural mas. Nom.	ـُونَ (cf. § 32)
„ „ Gen. and Acc.	ـِينَ (cf. ٢١٠)
„ fem. Nom.	ـَات (cf. ٢١١—)
„ „ Gen. and Acc.	ـَاتِ

The inflectional endings of the Sing. are rejected before these endings; instead of the ة of the fem. ending ـَة is used before the Dual ending (also in the

Sing. before pronominal suffixes) e. g. جَارِيَّةٌ, Dual جَارِيَتَانِ.

b. Many adjectives, as well as a number of substantives, form their plural by affixing the terminations just mentioned. Instances are found of substantives with a fem. termination forming their Plural with a mas. ending (e. g. سَنَةٌ year, Plu. سِنُونَ), still more frequently however substantives without a fem. termination form their Plurals with a fem. ending, e. g. حَالٌ condition, Plu. حَالَاتٌ; سَمَاءٌ heaven, Plu. سَمَاوَاتٌ (with transition of Hamza into Wāw), also written سَمَوَاتٌ.

§ 54. In regard to the case inflection of the Singular, a distinction must be made between the so-called *Nomina triptota*, i. e. those declinable in full and the so-called *Nomina diptota*, i. e. those not declinable in full. The latter never receive the nunation; and distinguish outwardly, when they are not determined by the article or the addition of a genitive, only two cases.

a. The endings of the triptote noun are as follows:

in the Nom. Sing.	س	un
in the Gen.	ن	in
in the Acc.	ن	an

Instead of ـِ only ـَ is written with the fem. termination, e. g. رَجُلًا , but مَدِينَةً ; also فَتًى and عَصَا (cf. § 3 b).

b. The endings of the diptote noun are:

in the Nom Sing. ـُ *u*,

in the Gen. and Acc. Sing. ـِ *a*.

In the dictionary the triptote are distinguished from the diptote nouns by the nunation being always written over the former, e. g. رَجُلٌ *a man*; while this is wanting with the diptota, e. g. أَسَدٌ .

§ 55. Whole classes of nouns are always diptote, e. g.

a. All proper names which are feminine or have the feminine ending, e. g. مِصْرٌ , فَاطِمَةٌ (*Egypt*), as fem. proper names; طَالِحٌ , as the proper name of a man. Besides these the greater number of those proper names which are originally foreign to Arabic, e. g. إِبْرَاهِيمُ *Abraham*.

b. Many so-called broken plurals; cf. § 63, Nos. 20, 22, 25, 26, 29, 30.

c. Adjectives of the form أَفْعَلٌ (§ 47 c, e).

d. Adjectives of the form فَعْلَانٌ , which in the fem. have the form فَعْلَى , e. g. غَضَبَانٌ *angry*, fem.

e. Feminines formed with the endings ـِى or ـِآء (§ 51 b, c). Cf. also the inner plurals § 63, Nos. 21, 28.

§ 56. The fact of a noun's being determinate or indeterminate affects the inflection of the Sing. and of the fem. Plu. A noun is determinate:

a. Essentially, as a proper name, e. g. مُحَمَّدٌ *muḥammadun* Muhammed; أَحْمَدٌ *aḥmadu* Ahmed.

b. By means of the article, e. g. فَرَسٌ *a horse*, الْفَرَسُ *the horse*. (Certain proper names also always have the article, e. g. الْحَارِثُ *al-hāritu*.)

c. By the addition of a following genitive (noun or pronominal suffix), by which the nomen regens is placed in the status constructus, e. g. فَرَسُ الرَّجُلِ *the horse of the man*, فَرَسُهُ *his horse*.

The inflectional endings of a noun determined by the article (b) or by a following genitive (c), so far as they do not agree with those of an indeterminate noun, are as follows:

Sing. Nom.	ـُ
” Gen.	ـِ
” Acc.	ـَ
Plu. fem. Nom.	ـُ
” ” Gen.	ـِ

i. e. the nunation is in all cases rejected. All triptote and diptote nouns receive these endings, when they are determined by the article or by annexation, e. g. Nom. **أَسْوَدٌ**, Gen. Acc. **أَسْوَدَ**; but Nom. **الْأَسْوَدُ**, Gen. **الْأَسْوَدِ**, Acc. **الْأَسْوَدَ**.

§ 57. Before a following genitive (noun or pronominal suffix according to § 56 c) the endings **ِ** of the Dual and **ِ** of the Plural fall away, e. g.

Dual Nom. of **عَبْدٌ** = **عَبْدَانِ**, but **عَبْدَا الرَّزِيزِ** *the two slaves of the Vizier*.

Dual Gen. and Acc. **عَبْدَيْنِ**, but **ضَرَبْتُ عَبْدَيَّ عُمَرَ** *I have beaten the two slaves of Omar* (before a connective Alif, e. g. **عَبْدَيَّ الرَّزِيزِ**, cf. § 6 e).

Plu. Nom. of **قَصَّابٌ** *slaughterer, executioner* = **قَصَّابُونَ**, but **قَصَّابُو الْمَلِكِ** *the executioners of the king* (in such a case an Alif without effect on the pronunciation is sometimes inserted after the *ū*; **قَصَّابُوا الْمَلِكِ**, cf. § 2 e).

Plu. Gen. and Acc. **قَصَّابِينَ**, but **رَأَيْتُ قَصَّابِي الْمَلِكِ** *I have seen the executioners of the king*.

For the inflection of nouns in *in* and *an* cf. § 40 Rem. e.

§ 58. On the forms of the suffixed pronouns cf. § 11 b—d. Before the suffixed pronoun of the 1. Sing. the short inflectional endings of the stat. constr. of nouns fall off, e. g. قَصَائِي. The suffix of the 1. Sing. takes the form يَ after final *ā*, *ī* or *ai*, e. g. to the Nom. Dual قَصَائِي; to فتَي, فتَي (§§ 2 d; 40 Rem. b); to the Gen. and Acc. Plu. قَصَائِي; to قَاضِي (§ 40 Rem. b), قَاضِي; to the Gen. and Acc. Dual قَصَائِي. The final *ū* of the stat. constr. Plu. mas. is changed to *ī* before the affixed يَ, e. g. قَصَابُو becomes قَصَائِي, and this with the suffix of the 1. Sing. قَصَائِي (no longer to be distinguished from the form of the Gen. and Acc. Plu.). The same thing happens with the ending *au* of stems ult. يَ (cf. Table XIX), e. g. مُصْطَفَوُ becomes مُصْطَفَي, and this with the suffix مُصْطَفَي (also no longer to be distinguished from the form of the Gen. and Acc.)

For the foregoing cf. the paradigms of nominal inflection in Tables XVIII fol.

§ 59. In the case of substantival outer plurals, which are formed from mas. or fem. nouns with one short vowel (i. e. فَعْلٌ, فِعْلٌ, فُعْلٌ und فَعْلَةٌ, فِعْلَةٌ, فُعْلَةٌ), the second radical frequently receives a vocalic

addition, which either is similar to the vowel of the first radical, or else is *ā*, e. g. ^{أَرْضُ} *earth* Plu. ^{أَرْضُونَ}, more seldom ^{أَرْضُونَ}, and ^{أَرْضَاتُ} more seldom ^{أَرْضَاتُ}; ^{ظُلْمَةٌ} *darkness*, Plu. ^{ظُلُمَاتُ} alongside ^{ظُلُمَاتُ} and ^{ظُلُمَاتُ}. This is often the case with the Plu. to the form ^{فَعْلَةٌ}, e. g. ^{طَعْنَةٌ} (§ 51 Rem.) *a single blow, thrust*, Plu. ^{طَعْنَاتُ} *some blows, thrusts*.

§ 60. Before the word ^{ابْنُ} *son* (which is then written without the *ī*) a proper name loses the nunation in the case mentioned § 6 f 2, e. g. ^{مُسْلِمُ بْنُ الْوَلِيدِ} *muslimu-bnu-lwalīdi* "Muslim the son of al-Walīd". While ^{زَيْدُ بْنُ بِشْرٍ} *zaiduni-bnu bischrin* (§ 6 e) means "Zaid is the son of Bishr."

§ 61. After the vocative particle ^{يَا} the noun follows in the Nom., but without the nunation, e. g. ^{مُحَمَّدُ} *Muhammed*, ^{يَا مُحَمَّدُ} *O Muhammed*. But if any complement whatever (e. g. an object or a genitive) is added to the noun standing in the vocative, the person addressed is put in the accusative, e. g. ^{عَبْدُ اللَّهِ} *Abdallah!* (*O servant of God!*); ^{يَا بَنِي كِنْدَةَ} *O Banu Kinda!* i. e. members of the tribe Kinda (where ^{بَنِي}, cf. § 57, is the form of the

stat. constr. from **بَنِينَ**).—After the vocative particle **يَا** (before which **يَا** also can stand) a determinate Nom. always follows, e. g. **يَا أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ** *O ye people*.

§ 62. The so-called broken plurals (*Plurales fracti*), called also inner plurals because they are formed, not by affixed terminations, but by internal change, are really only collective forms. Hence the language treats them as feminine Singulars and construes them accordingly, e. g. **أَبْوَابٌ مُتَفَرِّقَةٌ** *different gates*, where **أَبْوَابٌ** is the inner plural of **بَابٌ** (after the form **أَفْعَالٌ**), the Partic. V is put in the fem. Sing.—The inner plurals are inflected like the singulars, the inflection of which has been discussed in § 54 fol.

§ 63. As a rule the inner plurals are placed in the dictionary alongside the singular of the noun: where this is not the case it is to be assumed that the word has no plural, or only an outer one. Sometimes to one and the same word there are several plural forms, in certain cases each connected with one of its various meanings. Particular forms of the inner plural can as a rule be derived only from particular forms of the singular. Here follows a bare general view of these forms, commencing with the simplest.

1. فَعْلٌ from أَفْعَلٌ (§ 47 c) and its fem. فَعْلَاءٌ (§ 51 c), e. g. حُمْرٌ from أَحْمَرٌ *red*; سُودٌ from أَسْوَدٌ *black*; بَيْضٌ (for بَيْضٌ) from أَبْيَضٌ *white*.

2. فَعْلٌ (rare) e. g. حَلَقٌ from حَلَقَةٌ *circle*.

3. فَعْلٌ from the Sing. فِعْلَةٌ , e. g. قِطْعٌ from قِطْعَةٌ *piece*.

4. فَعْلٌ mostly from the Sing. فِعْلَةٌ , e. g. عَلْبٌ from عُلْبَةٌ *box*; أُمَّمٌ from أُمَّةٌ *a people*; but also from فِعْلَةٌ , e. g. قَرْىٌ (for قَرْىٌ after § 40 Rem. b) from قَرْيَةٌ *village*.

5. فَعْلٌ from various forms of the Singular, e. g. كُتُبٌ from كِتَابٌ *a book*.

6. فِعْلَةٌ , e. g. غُصْنَةٌ from غُصْنٌ *a twig*; إِخْوَةٌ from أَخٌ *brother*.

7. فِعْلَةٌ especially from the Sing. فَاعِلٌ , e. g. كَمَلَةٌ from كَامِلٌ *perfect*; but also from فَعِيلٌ , e. g. سَادَةٌ (for سَيِّدَةٌ after § 39 Rem.) from سَيِّدٌ *lord* (cf. § 47 a Rem.).

8. فِعْلَةٌ (rare), e. g. قِرْدَةٌ from قِرْدٌ *ape*.

9. ⁹فُعَلَةٌ from ⁹فَاعِلٌ ult. ⁹ى, e. g. ⁹قُضَاةٌ (for ⁹قُضَيَّةٌ after § 39 Rem.) from ⁹قَاضٍ *judge*.

10. ⁹فِعَالٌ a very frequent plural form from various Singulars, e. g. ⁹قِدَاحٌ from ⁹قِدْحٌ *arrow*.

11. ⁹فَعِيْلٌ (rare), e. g. ⁹حَبِيرٌ from ⁹حَبَارٌ *ass*.

12. ⁹فُعُولٌ a very frequent plural form from various Singulars, e. g. ⁹جُنُودٌ from ⁹جُنْدٌ *a band of soldiers*; ⁹بُكَيٌّ and (with transition of *u* to *i*) ⁹بِكَيٌّ (for ⁹بُكُوى after § 40 Rem. c) from ⁹بَاكٌ *weeping*.

13. ⁹فِعَالَةٌ (rare), e. g. ⁹حِجَارَةٌ from ⁹حَجَرٌ *a stone*.

14. ⁹فُعُولَةٌ (rare) e. g. ⁹عُؤْمَةٌ from ⁹عَمٌ *uncle*.

15. ⁹فُعَلٌ from ⁹فَاعِلٌ, e. g. ⁹بُهَلٌ from ⁹بَاهِلٌ *a female camel without a brand mark*.

16. ⁹فُعَالٌ from ⁹فَاعِلٌ, e. g. ⁹كُتَّابٌ from ⁹كَاتِبٌ *scribe*.

17. ⁹أَفْعُلٌ from various Singulars, e. g. ⁹أَرْجُلٌ from ⁹رَجْلٌ *foot*.

18. ⁹أَفْعَلَةٌ from various Singulars, e. g. ⁹أَرْغِفَةٌ from ⁹رَغِيفٌ *cake of bread*; ⁹أَحِبَّةٌ from ⁹حَبِيبٌ *friend, loved one*; ⁹أَئِمَّةٌ from ⁹إِمَامٌ *president*; ⁹آِلَٰهَةٌ from ⁹إِلَٰهٌ *God*.

19. أَفْعَالٌ a very frequent Plural form from various Singulars, e. g. اَمْطَارٌ from مَطَرٌ *rain*; أَشْيَاءٌ (without nunation) from شَيْءٌ *thing, matter*.

20. أَفْعِلَاءٌ chiefly from فَعِيلٌ, e. g. أَقْرَبَاءٌ from قَرِيبٌ *relative*; أَغْنِيَاءٌ from غَنِيٌّ *rich*.

21. فَعْعَلَى (rare), e. g. جَرَحَى from جَرِيحٌ *wounded*.

22. فُعْلَاءٌ, e. g. شَعْرَاءٌ from شَاعِرٌ *poet*.

23. فُعْلَانٌ, e. g. فِتْيَانٌ from فَتًى *youth*; جِيرَانٌ (instead of جُورَانٌ § 39 Rem.) from جَارٌ *neighbour*.

24. فُعْلَانٌ, e. g. بُلْدَانٌ from بَلَدٌ *district*; فُرْسَانٌ from فَارِسٌ *rider*.

25. فَوَاعِلٌ chiefly from فَاعِلَةٌ and فَاعِلٌ, e. g. فَوَارِسٌ from صَوَاعِقُ *thunder-bolt*; فَوَارِسٌ from فَارِسٌ *rider*; خَوَاصٌ (instead of خَوَاصِصٌ § 35 Rem. 2) from خَاصٌّ (or خَاصَّةٌ) *peculiar, noble, excellent*.

26. فَعَائِلٌ from Singulars with a long vowel after the second radical, e. g. عَجَائِبٌ from عَجِيبَةٌ *miracle*; عَرَايِسُ from عَرُوسٌ *bride*.

27. فَعَالٍ, e. g. فَتَاوٌ from فَتْوَى *decision*.

28. فَعَالَى, e. g. صَحَارَى from صَحْرَاءٌ *desert*; هَدَايَا (instead of هَدَايَى § 2 d Rem.) from هَدِيَّةٌ *present, gift*.

29. فَعَالِلُ (according to the formation of the noun with prefixed ا, ت, or م respectively also أَفَاعِلُ, تَفَاعِلُ, مَفَاعِلُ) from quadrilateral nouns, e. g. جَنَادِبُ from جُنْدَبُ *grasshopper*; أَأْمِلُ from أَئْمَلَةٌ *tip of the finger*; تَجَارِبُ from تَجْرِبَةٌ *experience*; مَزَايِلُ from مَرْبَلَةٌ *dung-heap*; مَسَايِحُ from مَسَاحَةٌ *interval*.

30. فَعَالِيلُ (according to the formation of the noun also فَوَاعِيلُ, أَفَاعِيلُ, تَفَاعِيلُ respectively,) from quadrilateral nouns, which have a long vowel before the last radical, e. g. سَرَّاحِينُ from سَرَّاحٍ *wolf*; جَوَاسِيسُ from جَاسُوسٌ *spy*; أَكَالِيلُ from أَكْلِيلٌ *crown*; تَصَارِيفُ from تَصْرِيفٌ *turning, declension*; مَقَادِيرُ from مَقْدُورٌ *lot, fate*.

31. فَعَالِلَةٌ (according to the formation of the noun also أَفَاعِلَةٌ, تَفَاعِلَةٌ, مَفَاعِلَةٌ respectively) from quadrilateral nouns, e. g. جَبَّارٌ from جَبَّارَةٌ *mighty man, giant*; أَسَاقِفَةٌ from أَسْقَفٌ *bishop*; تَلَامِيذٌ from تَلَامِيذٌ *scholar*; بَغَادِدِيُّ from بَغْدَادِيٌّ *an inhabitant of Bagdad*.

§ 64 a. The Plural forms Nos. 25—31 (only No. 28 differs slightly) fall under the class of collectives

formed from nouns of more than three radicals: all these take an *ā* with the first, an *ā* with the second, an *i* with the third radical, and are (with the exception of No. 31) diptota. Plurals of these forms, derived from nouns ult. ^سى, form an exception; in that they receive the nunation in the Nom. and Gen. though not in the Acc., e. g. Nom. and Gen. جَوَارٍ (after the form فَوَاعِلُ No. 25) from جَارِيَةٌ female slave; Acc. however جَوَارِي; likewise the forms under Nos. 27 and 29, e. g. مَعَانٍ (after the form مَفَاعِلُ No. 29 from مَعْنَى meaning).

b. The forms 6 and 17—19 are as a rule used only for objects less than 10 in number.

§ 65. The following nouns (arranged here alphabetically) are irregular in their mode of inflection:

a. ^سأَب father, ^سأَخ brother, ^سحَم father in law; in the stat. constr. (as also before a suffix beginning with a consonant) take the forms:

Nom.	أَبٌ,	أَخٌ,	حَمٌ
Gen.	أَبِي,	أَخِي,	حَمِي
Acc.	أَبَا,	أَخَا,	حَبَا

The Dual of ^سأَب has the form أَبَوَانِ (i. e. both parents), the Plural has the form آبَاءُ (§ 63 No. 19). The Voc.

Sing. with suffix of the 1. Pers. Sing. **يَا أَبَتِ**, **يَا أَبَتِي**,
يَا أَبَتَ.

b. **ابْنٌ** *son*; outer Plu. Nom. **بَنُونَ** (stat. constr. **بَنُو**), Gen.-Acc. **بَنِينَ** (stat. constr. **بَنِي**); inner Plu. **أَبْنَاءَ** after § 63 No. 19.

c. **أَخٌ** *brother*, see under a; inner Plu. after § 63 No. 6 **أَخَوَةٌ** or No. 23 **أَخْوَانٌ**.

d. **أَخْتُ** *sister*, Plu. **أَخَوَاتٌ**.

e. **أَمْرٌ** or **أَمْرُو** (alongside of **مَرءٌ** *man*; Gen. **أَمْرِي**; Acc. **أَمْرًا**).

f. **أَمْرَأَةٌ** *woman*; Plu. from another stem **نِسَاءٌ** (§ 63 No. 10), **نِسْوَةٌ** (§ 63 No. 6), or **نِسْوَانٌ** (§ 63 No. 23).

g. **أُمٌ** *mother*, Plu. **أُمَّهَاتٌ** or **أُمَّاتٌ**.

h. **إِنْسَانٌ** *man, human being*, Plu. **أَنَاسٌ**, generally **قَاسٌ**.

i. **بِنْتُ** *daughter*, frequently also **إِبْنَةٌ** (with connective Alif), Plu. **بَنَاتٌ**.

k. **دِينَارٌ** *dinar, gold-piece*; inner Plu. after § 63 No. 30 **دَكَانِيرٌ**.

l. ذُو (only in the stat. constr.) *possessor of* . . . ;
Gen. ذِي; Acc. ذَا; Dual Nom. ذَوَا; Plu. Nom. ذَوُو,
for which اُولُو is generally used.

m. سَنَة year, Plu. Nom. سِنُون (or سُنُون);
Gen.-Acc. سِنِين.

n. عَمْرُو ^{sc} 'amrun, 'Amr, mas. proper name. In writing a و is added to this word in the Nom. and Gen. (عَمْرُو), to distinguish it from عَمْرُ 'umaru (diptoton) 'Omar. Acc. عَمْرًا 'Amr, Gen.-Acc. عَمْرَ 'Omar.

o. فَم or فَوْه ^s mouth, in the stat. constr. generally
Nom. فُو, Gen. فِي, Acc. فَا; inner Plu. (after § 63
No. 19) أَفْوَاهَ.

p. لَيْل ^s night, inner Plu. (from a stem لَيْلِي, after
§ 63 No. 27) لَيَالٍ.

q. مَاء ^s water, inner Plu. (after § 63 No. 10) مِيَاءَ
or (No. 19) أَمْوَاءَ.

r. يَد ^s hand, inner Plu. (after § 63 No. 17) أَيْدٍ
from أَيْدِي ^s (cf. § 40 Rem. c).

s. يَوْم ^s day, inner Plu. (after § 63 No. 19) أَيَّامَ
from أَيَّوَامَ ^s.

*Chapter IV.***The Numerals.**

§ 66. The cardinal numbers have the following forms:

	Mas.	Fem.	
1	وَاحِدٌ أَحَدٌ	وَاحِدَةٌ إِحْدَى	inflected
2	إِثْنَانِ	إِثْنَتَانِ	(inflected as a Dual)
3	ثَلَاثٌ (ثَلَاثٌ)	ثَلَاثَةٌ (ثَلَاثَةٌ)	inflected
4	أَرْبَعٌ	أَرْبَعَةٌ	"
5	خَمْسٌ	خَمْسَةٌ	"
6	سِتٌّ	سِتَّةٌ	"
7	سَبْعٌ	سَبْعَةٌ	"
8	ثَمَانٍ (Tab.XX)	ثَمَانِيَةٌ	"
9	تِسْعٌ	تِسْعَةٌ	"
10	عَشْرٌ	عَشْرَةٌ	"
11	أَحَدٌ عَشَرَ	إِحْدَى عَشْرَةَ	without inflection

	Mas.	Fem.	
12	إِثْنَا عَشَرَ	إِثْنَتَا عَشْرَةَ	Gen. Acc. "إِثْنَى ع" , "إِثْنَتَى ع"
13	ثَلَاثَةَ عَشَرَ	ثَلَاثَ عَشْرَةَ	without inflection
14	أَرْبَعَةَ عَشَرَ	أَرْبَعَ عَشْرَةَ	" "
15	خَمْسَةَ عَشَرَ	خَمْسَ عَشْرَةَ	" "
16	سِتَّةَ عَشَرَ	سِتَّ عَشْرَةَ	" "
17	سَبْعَةَ عَشَرَ	سَبْعَ عَشْرَةَ	" "
18	ثَمَانِيَةَ عَشَرَ	ثَمَانِيَ عَشْرَةَ	" "
19	تِسْعَةَ عَشَرَ	تِسْعَ عَشْرَةَ	" "
20	عِشْرُونَ		like all tens inflected as an outer

Plu. mas.

21	إِحْدَى وَعِشْرُونَ	أَحَدٌ وَعِشْرُونَ	
30	سِتُّونَ	خَمْسُونَ	40 , أَرْبَعُونَ
70	تِسْعُونَ	ثَمَانُونَ	80 , سَبْعُونَ

100 مِائَةٌ (also written مِئَةٌ, and always to be pronounced so *mi'atun*, because the Alif does not affect the pronunciation).

500, أَرْبَع مِائَةٍ 400, *ثَلَاث مِائَةٍ 300, مِائَتَانِ 200
ثَمَانِي 800, سَبْع مِائَةٍ 700, سِت مِائَةٍ 600, خَمْس مِائَةٍ
تِسْع مِائَةٍ 900, مِائَةٍ.

1000 أَلْف, 2000 أَلْفَانِ, 3000 ثَلَاثَةُ آلَافٍ (where
آلَاف is an inner Plural after the form أَنْعَالُ § 63,
No. 19) &c. 11000 أَحَد عَشَرَ أَلْفًا, 100000 مِائَةُ أَلْفٍ,
1000000 أَلْفُ أَلْفٍ.

§ 67. The cardinal numbers are connected with the words, which denote the objects numbered, in the following manner:

a. The numbers 3—10 (except when they are placed after the noun in apposition, which is also possible) take the word, which denotes the object numbered, after them in the Gen. Plu.; the Fem. form of these numeral substantives is used with nouns of the Mas. gender, and the Mas. form with nouns of the Fem. gender, e. g. ثَلَاثَةُ بَنِينَ *three sons* أَرْبَعُ بَنَاتٍ *four daughters*.

b. The numbers from 11—99 take the word, which denotes the object numbered, after them in the Acc.

* Often written ثَلَاثِيَّةٌ &c. also.

Sing., e. g. ثَلَاثُونَ رَجُلًا 30 *men* (in Germ. 30 Mann, cf. in Eng. 30 horse for 30 horsemen).

c. The numbers from 100 upwards take the word, which denotes the object numbered, after them in the Gen. Sing., e. g. أَرْبَعُ مِائَةٍ رَجُلٍ 400 *men*.

d. In compound numbers the mode of construction depends on the last numeral. For the combination of numerals the particle وَ is used; the units and tens are placed either before the hundreds, or after the thousands and hundreds, e. g. 1885 *years* is either أَلْفٌ وَثَمَانِي خَمْسٌ وَثَمَانُونَ وَثَمَانِي مِائَةٍ وَأَلْفُ سَنَةٍ or أَلْفٌ وَثَمَانِي مِائَةٍ وَخَمْسٌ وَثَمَانُونَ سَنَةً.

§ 68 a. The ordinal numbers have for the most part the form of the Part. Act. I, and are of the following forms:

	Mas.	Fem.		Mas.	Fem.
1.	أَوَّلٌ, first	أُولَى	6.	سَادِسٌ	سَادِسَةٌ
2.	ثَانٍ	ثَانِيَةٌ	7.	سَابِعٌ	سَابِعَةٌ
3.	ثَالِثٌ	ثَالِثَةٌ	8.	ثَامِنٌ	ثَامِنَةٌ
4.	رَابِعٌ	رَابِعَةٌ	9.	تَاسِعٌ	تَاسِعَةٌ
5.	خَامِسٌ	خَامِسَةٌ	10.	عَاشِرٌ	عَاشِرَةٌ

Mas.

Fem.

11. حَادِيَةَ عَشْرَةَ حَادِي عَشَرَ without inflection
 12. ثَانِيَةَ عَشْرَةَ ثَانِي عَشَرَ " "
 13. ثَالِثَةَ عَشْرَةَ ثَالِث عَشَرَ &c.

The cardinal numbers are used to express the ordinals of the tens, &c.

b. Fractional numbers are generally expressed by the form فُعِلْتُ, e. g. ثُلُثُ *a third*.

Chapter I.

The Particles.

§ 69. The adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions cannot all be enumerated here; reference must be made to the dictionary. The adverbial case in Arabic is the Acc., e. g. طَوِيلًا *for long*. The prepositions also are for the most part accusatives in the stat. constr., e. g. فَوْقَ *above*.

§ 70. The following particles (alphabetically arranged) are connected inseparably with words:

a. اَ (هَ) interrogative particle, e. g. أَقَتَلَ *has he killed?*

b. **ب** (ب) prep. = *in*, e.g. with pronominal suffixes,

1. **ي** *in me*, 2. **كَ** *mas.*, 3. **يْ** *mas.* &c.

c. **تَ** particle of asseveration, e. g. **تَاللَّهِ** *by God*,
by Jove.

d. **سَ** shortened from **سَوْفَ** particle, which gives the Imperf. the meaning of a future, e. g. **سَيَقْتُلُ** *he will kill*.

e. **فَ** *then, for, so, thus*, a particle denoting a less immediate (close) connection than **وَ**,—used especially before a verbal sentence, the subject of which is not identical with that of the preceding sentence.

f. **كَ** (ك) *instar, like, as*.

g. **لَ** a corroborative particle before verbs, esp. in oaths, e. g. **لَيَقْتُلَنَّ** *he will certainly kill*; it is used also before nouns.

h. **لِ** (ل) prep. and conj., before suffixes (except with the 1. Pers. Sing. which is **لِي**), e. g. **لَكَ**.

i. **وَ** (و, و) connective particle *and*; as an asseverative particle with the Gen., e. g. **وَاللَّهِ** *by God*,
by Jove.

§ 71. In regard to the combination of the prepositions and conjunctions with suffixes, besides what

was mentioned in § 58, the following may also be noted:

a. As in the case of nouns the final vowels are rejected before the suffix of the 1. Sing., e. g. **بَعْدَ** *after*, with the suffix of the 1. Sing. **بَعْدِي**, but **بَعْدَكَ**, &c.

b. The prepositions **عَلَى** *over* and **إِلَى** *against* vocalise the final **ي** before suffixes (against § 2 d), e. g.

with suffix of the 2. mas. **إِلَيْكَ**, **عَلَيْكَ**

" " " " 3. " **إِلَيْهِ**, **عَلَيْهِ**

" " " " 1. " **إِلَيَّ**, **عَلَيَّ** (after § 58)

c. **إِنَّ** *look, behold, really, truly*, and **أَنَّ** *that*, have the forms:

with the suffix of the 2. Sing. mas. **إِنَّكَ** and **أَنَّكَ**,

" " " " " 1. " **إِنْنِي** or **أَنَّي**,

أَنْنِي or **أَنْنِي**,

" " " " " 1. Plu. **إِنَّنَا** or **أَنَّانَا**,

أَنْنَا or **أَنْنَا**.

PART III.

REMARKS ON SYNTAX.

Chapter I.

The Tenses.

§ 72. The *Perfect* (cf. § 29) expresses a completed action, the completion of which falls either in the past, the present, or the future; or is thought of as falling in one of these periods. The *Imperfect* expresses an incompleted action, which can likewise fall in either of these three periods of time.

§ 73 a. The *Perfect* is in the first place the narrative tense, when an action completed in the past is the subject of discussion; as a rule it is to be rendered by our *Preterite*, e. g. جَاءَ زَيْدٌ *there came Zaid*.

b. The *Perfect* expresses that an action or a state has continued from the beginning, and hence continues still, e. g. اِخْتَلَفُوا الْعُلَمَاءُ *learned men (always) disagree*; اَللّٰهُ تَعَالٰى *God, he is (from eternity) exalted*.

c. When the Perfect expresses an action completed in the present, it is to be rendered by our Present tense, e. g. *أَعْطَيْتَكَ هَذَا* *I present you with this* (at this moment the action is completed).

d. The Perfect in oaths and wishes expresses, in the meaning of the speaker, an action completed in the future, e. g. *لَعَنَهُ اللَّهُ* *God curse him*; also with *لَا* = *not*, e. g. *لَا رَحِمَهُ اللَّهُ* *may God not have mercy upon him*.

e. When the particle *قَدْ* occurs before the Perfect, it is to be rendered in the majority of instances by our Perfect, e. g. *قَدْ ذَكَرْنَا* *we have mentioned* (often with the meaning "just now"), or *we had mentioned*. Though the perfect with *قَدْ* can be used in the sense mentioned under c.

f. When the verb *كَانَ* (*to be*) occurs before the Perfect (with or without *قَدْ*), it expresses for the most part our Pluperfect, e. g. *لَمَّا وُلِدَ مُوسَى كَانَ قَدْ أَمَرَ فِرْعَوْنُ بِقَتْلِ الْأَطْفَالِ* *as Moses was born, Pharaoh had (just) commanded to kill the young children*.

REM. After *كَانَ*, instead of the above verbal sentence (§ 91), a compound nominal sentence (§ 92) can follow, e. g. *كَانَ فِرْعَوْنُ قَدْ أَمَرَ*.

g. On the Perfect after إِذَا, and in conditional sentences cf. §§ 101, 102.

§ 74. The *Imperfect* (Indicative) is to be rendered according to circumstances by our Present or our Future, sometimes also by our Imperfect.

a. When the Future is to be particularly expressed by the Arabic Imperfect, the adverb سَوْفَ (*end*), also shortened to سَ and then inseparable (cf. § 70 d) is prefixed, e. g. سَوْفَ تَعْلَمُونَ *ye shall recognise (it)*; سَنُرِيهِمْ (§ 41 b) *we shall show them*.

b. The Imperfect expresses an action, which accompanies another and that a past action, or which is future in regard to this other action, e. g. جَاءُوا أَبَاهُمْ يَبْكُونَ *they came to their father, weeping* (i. e. while they were weeping, cf. § 100 b); أَتَى الْعَيْنَ يَشْرَبُ *he came to the spring, to drink*.

c. The Latin Imperfect is expressed by the combination of كَانَ with the Imperfect (cf. § 73 f, and Rem.); we can sometimes render such a combination by our "used" "was (were) wont", e. g. كَانَ يَأْخُذُ فِي كُلِّ يَوْمٍ ثَلَاثَةَ دَرَاهِمَ *he used to take each day three drachmæ*.

REM. The Imperfect is in this manner placed in direct dependence on another verb, e. g. مَا زِلْتُ أَشْرَبُ *I did not cease drinking*; جَعَلَ يُكَلِّمُ النَّاسَ *he began to speak with the people*.

§ 75. The *Subjunctive* is used in dependent sentences, in which the action is to be represented as one expected, and dependent on the principal clause, hence for the most part as one which will possibly occur only in the future. Hence this mood stands frequently (though not always) after the conjunctions فَ حَتَّى (from لَا أَنْ) *that not*, until that, so that; and always after لِ لِأَنَّ (from لَا لِأَنَّ) *in order that not*, e. g. جَاءَ لِيُزَوِّرَنِي *he came in order to visit me*; أَمَرَ أَنْ يَكْتُبَ *he commanded him, that he should write*.—In like manner the Subjunctive stands after لَنْ (لَا أَنْ) *it will not be, that*, e. g. لَنْ أَرْسِلَهُ *I shall not send him*.

§ 76. The *Jussive* expresses a command, and is used:

a. in positive commands, mostly connected with the particle لِ, e. g. لِيَكْتُبْ *he shall write*.

REM. If فَ occurs before such a form, لِ loses its vowel, e. g. فَلْيَتَوَكَّلْ . . . (then) *he shall trust*.

b. In all negative commands, or prohibitions, with the negative particle لَا, e. g. لَا تَقُلْ *say not, thou shalt not say.*

c. Always after the negative particle لَمْ, as the negation of a completed action, e. g. لَمْ يَضْرِبْ *he has not struck* (as the negation of ضَرَبَ).

d. In the protasis and apodosis of conditional sentences, cf. § 103.

§ 77. As regards the use of the *Participles* the following may be noted:

a. The Active Participle frequently expresses (especially as the predicate of a nominal sentence, § 92 a) our "on the point of", e. g. أَنَا قَادِمٌ إِلَيْكَ *I am (on the point of) coming to thee.*

b. The Passive Participle frequently has the meaning of a gerundive, e. g. مَرْجُوٌّ *hoped for, or to be hoped for.*

c. The Passive Participle in Arabic can also be used impersonally, e. g. كُتِبَ عَلَى الْحَجَرِ *it is written upon the stone*, حَجَرٌ مَكْتُوبٌ عَلَيْهِ *a stone upon which (it) is written*; also determined الْحَجَرُ الْمَكْتُوبُ عَلَيْهِ *the stone upon which (it) is written.*

Chapter II.

The government of the Verb.

§ 78. The accusative is in general the case dependent on the verbal idea. We distinguish here the cases in which the accusative stands α as object, β as predicate, γ as nearer definition.

α § 79. It is the province of the dictionary to point out, which verbs in Arabic have their object, or objects connected directly, or by means of a preposition. Certain classes of verbs in Arabic, as e. g. the verbs of "coming", take the goal, to which the action is directed, as a direct object, e. g. جَاءَ الْبَيْتَ *he came home*. The following take two accusatives: 1) Causative forms of verbs, which in the I. stem, are simply transitive, e. g. عَلَّمَ to *know*; causat. عَلَّمَهُ *he taught him reading*; 2) Verbs which express a "filling" or "giving", those likewise, which express a "making for something", a "considering to be something" and a "naming", as also many others, e. g. جَعَلَ اللَّهُ الْأَرْضَ فِرَاشًا *God made the earth for a carpet*; سَمَّى ابْنَهُ مُحَمَّدًا *he called his son Muhammed*.

REM. a. As in the latter cases the two objects really stand in the relation of subject and predicate

to one another (cf. § 92), a verb can stand instead of a noun as the second (remoter) object, e. g. وَجَدُوا بِضَاعَتَهُمْ رُدَّتْ إِلَيْهِمْ *they found their money (such as was) given back to them.*

REM. b. When a verb, which governs two accusatives, is put in the passive, the second accusative remains as it was, e. g. سُمِّيَ ابْنُهُ مُحَمَّدًا *his son was called Muhammed.*

§ 80. A so-called "absolute object" can be added to every verb to strengthen or more nearly define the verbal idea. This absolute or inner object (cognate accusative) may be an infinitive, a nomen speciei (§ 48 c), or any other noun; e. g. ضَرَبَ ضَرْبًا *he struck a stroke* (supply "and what a stroke!"); أَدَبَهُ تَأْدِيبًا *he trained him with a good training* = well (in Arabic also with omission of the Infinitive); ضَرَبَنِي *he struck me a stroke which hurt me*; سَلَكَ سَبِيلَ جَدِّهِ *he walked the walk of his grandfather*, i. e. behaved like his grandfather.

β § 81. The accusative stands as predicate:

a. with verbs, which express a "being something" or a "becoming something"; of quite especial frequency with the verb كَانَ (med. وَ). This verb means either

1) *to be*, in the sense of *to exist*, e. g. *كَانَ وَزِيرٌ* *there was (lived) a vizier*, or 2) *to be something*; in the latter case it takes its predicate in the accusative, as do all verbs of similar meaning (e. g. *أُمْسَى* *to be something late*; *أَصْبَحَ* *to be something early*; *عَادَ* *to be or become something again*; *دَامَ* *to remain, to last*; *زَالَ* (especially with a negative) *to cease to be*; *صَارَ* *to become something*; *كَانَتْ أَمْرًا* *his wife was with child*).

b. With the negative *لَا*, when this expresses a general negation as the Arabs say. The accusative, which is always undetermined after *لَا*, then loses the nunation, e. g. *لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ* *there is (absolutely) no God except Allah*.

γ § 82. The accusative stands as nearer definition in the following cases:

a. The Accusative is used in expressions of place and time, e. g. *نَظَرَ يَمِينًا وَشِمَالًا* *he looked right and left*; *سَارَ فَرْسَخًا* *he journeyed a parasang*; *جَاؤَا عِشَاءً* *they came late in the evening*; *اسْتَمَرَّ عَلَى ذَلِكَ مُدَّةً* *he remained firm on this (matter) during the continuance of his life*.

b. The accusative (as a rule undetermined) is very frequently used in verbal sentences (rarely in

nominal sentences, § 90) to express a state or condition, e. g. سَارَ مُتَوَجِّهًا إِلَى الْمَدِينَةِ *he journeyed, travelling in the direction of Medina*; لَقِيتُ عَمْرًا بَاكِيًا *I have met 'Amr, weeping (i. e. while he wept)*.

REM. In regard to the case denoting the state or condition, it must always be carefully noted to which of the preceding nouns it refers; thus in the latter instance it might refer to the pronominal subject contained in لَقِيتُ.

c. The accusative of specification, also undetermined for the most part, expresses a nearer definition, e. g. تَصَبَّبَ عَرَقًا *he streamed with (in regard to) perspiration*; this accusative is frequently joined to elatives (§ 47e) of a somewhat general meaning, e. g. أَشَدُّ قَسَاوَةً *stronger as regards hardness = harder*.

d. The accusative is used to express the cause or the purpose of an action; in this case also it is for the most part undetermined, e. g. هَرَبُوا جُبْنًا *they fled for cowardice*.

Chapter III.

The government of the noun.

§ 83. There can be added to a noun, α the article, β a permutative (apposition), γ a qualification, δ a genitive.

α § 84. A noun, when it is preceded by the article, is determined (§ 56 b). This determination can however be stronger or weaker:

a. Certain words, which contain a temporal idea, are very strongly determined, e. g. *السَّاعَةُ* *this hour = now*, *الْيَوْمَ* *this day = today*, (הַיּוֹם) cf. the colloquial "the day"). In this case the article has the meaning of a demonstrative (cf. this use of the article in Greek).

REM. Like the article the demonstrative pronouns also are placed before, more seldom after, the determinate substantive, e. g. *هَذَا الرَّجُلُ* *this man*.

b. The determination by the article often serves merely to denote the genus (the generic use of the article), e. g. *هُوَ مِثْلُ الْحِمَارِ* *he is like an ass*.

β § 85. Under apposition (i. e. when a permutative is added to a noun) the following cases have especially to be mentioned:

a. A word denoting the material (cf. § 94 d) can be added in apposition to a substantive, e. g. *الصَّنَمُ الذَّهَبُ* *the golden idol*, prop. *the idol, the gold*.

b. The word *كُلُّ* *totality* either governs the noun, or with a suffix referring to the noun stands in

apposition to the noun, e. g. *كُلُّ النَّاسِ* or *النَّاسُ كُلُّهُمْ* *all men* (where *كُلُّ* naturally remains unchanged in gender and number).

γ § 86. A qualification can be:

a. An adjective, e. g. *رَجُلٌ حَسَنٌ* *a handsome man*; with the article *الرَّجُلُ الْحَسَنُ*.

b. A preposition with its case, e. g. *رَجُلٌ مِّنَ الْأَنْصَارِ* *a man(of) belonging to the helpers(of Muhammed)*.

c. A relative sentence, see § 99 b.

REM. When more than one qualification stands with a noun they are as a rule asyndetically connected (cf. § 97), e. g. *هُوَ فَطِنٌ بَلِيعٌ* *he is intelligent and eloquent*.

δ § 87. By the connection with a following genitive the governing noun, which is put in the so-called status constructus without the article, is determined; e. g. *رُمْحُ الْفَارِسِ* *the lance of the horseman*; the suffixes also are determinate genitives, e. g. *رُمْحُهُ* *his lance*. When the dependent noun is indeterminate, the governing noun generally remains indeterminate also, e. g. *بِنْتُ مَلِكٍ* *a king's daughter*. If this indeterminateness is to be especially marked, the genitive construction must be rejected, and the circumlocution

with *لِ* used, e. g. أَخٌ لَكُمْ *a brother of yours*. When an infinitive stands in the place of a finite verb, the subject or object of the sentence is in the dependent case of nouns, i. e. in the genitive, e. g. قَتَلَ زَيْدٌ *the killing of Zaid* i. e. *the circumstance that Zaid kills, or that Zaid is killed*. When the subject and object are expressed by the infinitive, the object remains in the accusative, e. g. مُدَاوَمَتُهُ شَرَبَ الْخَمْرِ *the circumstance that he continually indulged in the drinking of wine*; here too the circumlocution with *لِ* can be used, e. g. حُبِّي لِلْخَمْرِ *the circumstance that I am fond of wine*. If the infinitive is to remain undetermined before an object (e. g. in cases like § 82 d, &c.), the object can follow with *لِ* only, e. g. اِمْتَنَعُوا تَوْقِيًّا لِعِغْصَبِ عُثْمَانَ *they refused because they feared the wrath of 'Utmān*.

REM. This is the usage also if the participle is to remain undetermined (cf. e. g. §§ 81, 82 b), e. g. مَا زِلْتُ مُحِبًّا لِلْإِسْلَامِ *I have not ceased to be one who loves Islam*.

§ 88. Of particular kinds of Genitives the following may be noted here:

a. A general idea can be more nearly defined by a proper name following it in the genitive, e. g.

أَرْضُ الْيَمَنِ *the land of Yemen*.

b. A number of words of more general meaning frequently occur in connection with a genitive, though they are not necessarily determined by it, e. g. ذُو *possessor*, ذُو مَالٍ *a possessor of money, a rich man*; صَاحِبٌ *companion, possessor*, صَاحِبُ عَقْلٍ *a sensible man*; أَهْلُ الدُّنْيَا *the people of the world, = worldly people*; بَعْضُ *part*, e. g. بَعْضُ الْعُلَمَاءِ *one, some of the learned*, غَيْرٌ *prop. change, then another than*, e. g. مَاتَ الْمَلِكُ فَمَلَكَ بَعْدَهُ غَيْرُهُ *there died the king then there ruled after him another than he*.

c. Instead of a genitive a finite verb can be placed in dependence on certain words denoting ideas of time and place, e. g. يَوْمَ قُتِلَ *on the day that he was killed*.

d. A peculiar kind of genitive relation is formed further by the so-called "improper annexation", by which an adjective or participle is defined by a following genitive, e. g. رَجُلٌ حَسَنُ الْوَجْهِ *a man handsome of countenance*. This construction is best rendered by a relative sentence, the subject of which is the

word defining the governing idea, i. e. *a man whose countenance is handsome*. In such a case the governing word is not determined by the following genitive; if it is to be determined it receives the article (against the rule § 87), e. g. *الرَّجُلُ الْحَسَنُ الْوَجْهِ* *the man handsome of countenance*, i. e. *whose countenance is handsome*.

§ 89. The genitive cannot be separated from its governing word, hence other words, e. g. adjectival additions to the latter, are placed after the genitive, e. g. *بَيْتُ الْمَلِكِ الْوَاسِعُ* *the spacious house of the king*. When a genitive according to our mode of expression belongs to two substantives, it is represented in Arabic with the latter substantive by a suffixed personal pronoun, e. g. *سَيْفُ الْفَارِسِ وَرُحْمُهُ* *the horseman's sword and lance* (prop. *the sword of the horseman and his lance*).

Chapter IV.

The simple sentence.

§ 90. Sentences are either *Nominal* or *Verbal sentences*. The verbal sentence always contains in the first place a finite verb; such a verb with the pronoun

inherent in it already constitutes a verbal sentence for itself (e. g. *ضَرَبْتَ* *thou hast struck*), by which the beginning of an activity (in a wider sense) is always denoted. If besides a particular exponent of the subject idea inherent in the verb is added, it is placed after the verb, e. g. *ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ* *there has struck Zaid*. On the other hand a nominal sentence consists of a nominal subject and (in the simplest instances) a nominal predicate and denotes bare being, e. g. *زَيْدٌ غَنِيٌّ* *Zaid is rich*.

§ 91. In regard to *verbal sentences*, the finite verb does not always agree in gender and number with the following subject. The following are the chief points to be noted:

a. Before a subject in the Fem. Sing. (when it does not follow immediately), before outer Plurals, Duals, &c., sometimes before inner Plurals, which denote male beings, — the verb stands for the most part in the Mas. Sing., e. g. *أَقْبَلَ الْمُشْرِكُونَ* *there approached the idolaters*.

b. Before broken Plurals, especially those which do not denote male living beings, the verb stands in the Fem. Sing., e. g. *أَصَابَتْهُ الشَّدَايِدُ* *there came upon*

him the misfortunes (though also *قَالَتِ الْعُلَمَاءُ* there spoke the learned).

REM. A subject unknown (or purposely unnamed) is best translated by the word "one" (Germ. *man*; French *on*), and is in Arabic expressed as follows:

a. By the 3. Sing. Passive, e. g. *سِيرَ* a journey has been undertaken, one journeyed.

b. By the 3. Plu. (or the 2. Sing.) Active, e. g. *قَالُوا* one said (cf. "they say", "people say", "you say").

c. By a subject (Participle), formed from the same stem, added to the verb, e. g. *قَالَ قَائِلٌ*, or *قَالَ الْقَائِلُ* there spake one.

§ 92. In a *Nominal sentence*, the subject is in most instances determined, the predicate undetermined. The predicate consists either of:

a. A simple noun, e. g. *زَيْدٌ عَالِمٌ* Zaid is wise.

b. A preposition with its case, e. g. *الرَّجُلُ فِي الدَّارِ* the man is in the house.

c. A complete sentence, which can be (α) a verbal sentence, or (β) a nominal sentence; the whole sentence is then a compound one, e. g. (α) *زَيْدٌ مَرِضٌ* Zaid (he) is sick; (β) *زَيْدٌ مَرِضٌ أَبُوهُ* Zaid, his father is

sick; (زَيْدٌ أَبُوهُ مُسِينٌ) *Zaid his father is aged* (i. e. *Zaid's father &c.*).

§ 93. On the connection between subject and predicate in a nominal sentence the following should be noted:

a. The pronoun of the 3. person is as a rule (though not always) inserted between the subject and the predicate, when both are determinate, e. g. *اللَّهُ هُوَ الْحَيُّ* *God is the Living one* (sometimes this pronoun is used simply to emphasize the subject).

b. In negative and interrogative sentences the predicate *precedes* the subject, e. g. *أَيْنَ زَيْدٌ* *where is Zaid?* *مَا لَكُمْ مِنْ وَلِيٍّ* *ye have no helper at all* (in which example *مِنْ* (something, anything, of), strengthening the negative idea, has been added to the subject *وَلِيٍّ*).

In like manner a predicate, consisting of a preposition with its case, precedes the subject, when the latter is indeterminate, and not more nearly defined by a qualificative, e. g. *فِي الدَّارِ أَمْرَأَةٌ* *in the house is a woman*.

c. If the subject of a nominal sentence is a demonstrative pronoun, it agrees in gender with the following predicate, e. g. *هَذِهِ جَارِيَةٌ* *this is a female slave*.

d. The predicate of مَا *not* (often also of لَيْسَ §§ 42; 81) is introduced by بِ, e. g. مَا هَذَا بِمَلِكٍ *this is not a king*.

§ 94. In the relationship of subject and predicate the Arab places:

a. A thing and its measure, e. g. الْعَمُودُ ثَلَاثُونَ ذِرَاعًا *the column is 30 cubits (high)*.

b. A thing and its like, e. g. الْبَيْعُ مِثْلُ الرِّبَا *the sale is the likeness of (like) usury*; also with لَ (§ 70 f.), which can likewise stand in every case.

c. A thing and its parts, e. g. مُلُوكُ الْفَرَسِ أَرْبَعٌ طَبَقَاتٍ *the kings of the Persians are (consist of) four classes*.

d. A thing and its material بَعْضُ الْأَصَابِعِ حَدِيدٌ *a part of the toes was (of) iron*, and a part of them (of) clay.

§ 95. a. A nominal sentence always follows إِنَّ (הִנֵּה) *look* and أَنَّ *that* (cf. § 71 c), likewise the compound particles لَكِنَّ (لَا كِنَّ) *still, however*, كَأَنَّ *as if*, لِأَنَّ *because*, and other combinations, as well as لَعَلَّ *perhaps*; the subject of this nominal sentence being placed in the accusative, e. g. إِنَّ زَيْدًا كَرِيمٌ *see*

(verily) *Zaid is generous*. In a nominal sentence of this kind the predicate, when it consists of a preposition with its case (cf. §§ 92b; 93 b), precedes the subject, which is in the accusative, e. g. *إِنَّ فِي الْقَلْعَةِ سِجْنًا* *in the citadel is a prison*.

REM. The corroborative particle *لَ* (§ 70 g) is often prefixed to the predicate after a preceding *إِنَّ* e. g. *إِنَّ أَبَانَا لَفِي ضَلَالٍ* *verily our father is in error*, or to the subject, e. g. *إِنَّ فِي ذَلِكَ لَعِبْرَةٌ* *verily therein is an example*.

b. After the above named particles the pronoun of the 3. Sing. mas. as the so-called pronoun of the fact, is sometimes used for the subject; the predicate then consists of a complete sentence (cf. § 92 c), e. g. *لَا يَفْلِحُ الظَّالِمُونَ* *verily it is: not prosperous are the evil-doers*; *قِيلَ أَنَّهُ كَانَ لِمُحَمَّدٍ أَرْبَعُ جَوَارٍ* *it is narrated, that Muhammed had four female slaves*.

REM. *إِنَّ* introduces a fresh independent sentence, while a sentence which begins with *أَنَّ* always forms a part of another sentence, e. g. *أَلَمْ تَعْلَمْ أَنَّ اللَّهَ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ* *dost thou not know that God is powerful above all?* In this instance the sentence beginning with *أَنَّ* is the object.

§ 96. As has been already remarked a dependent sentence forms an integral part of the principal sentence. Thus for instance in the sentence **يَنْبَغِي أَنْ تَفْعَلَ هَذَا**, the verbal sentence introduced by **أَنْ** is the subject of the verbal sentence consisting of **يَنْبَغِي**. Such dependent sentences also with **مَا** and the finite verb are of frequent occurrence, for according to the view of the Arabs this combination (like **أَنْ** with the finite verb) takes the place of an infinitive, e. g. **مِنْ ضَرْبِكَ زَيْدًا = عَجِبْتُ مِمَّا (مِنْ مَا) ضَرَبْتَ زَيْدًا**: *I wonder at this that (at the circumstance, that) thou hast struck Zaid.*

§ 97. If in a nominal sentence several predicates stand instead of one, these are for the most part asyndetically connected, e. g. **إِنِّي حَفِيزٌ عَلِيمٌ** *I am attentive (and) well-informed.* This is the case with the predicates of the verb **كَانَ** (which frequently occurs as the substantive verb), and the verbs similar to it (its "sisters" as they are called, cf. § 81), e. g. **إِنَّ الْمَمْلَكَةَ تَصِيرُ آخِرَ الْوَقْتِ مُخْتَلِطَةً مُخْتَلِفَةً بَعْضُهَا**
قَرَى *the kingdom will in the last time be*

mixed (and) torn 'by internal dissensions, (and) be one of which a part will be strong, and a part weak.

§ 98. After the exceptive particle **إِلَّا** that which is excepted stands in the accusative, when a positive sentence precedes, e. g. **جَاءَ النَّاسُ إِلَّا زَيْدًا** *there came the people, except Zaid*; when a negative sentence precedes that which is excepted stands more rarely in the accusative, but generally in the same case as that word which it limits, e. g. **مَا جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ إِلَّا زَيْدٌ** *there came not the people, except Zaid*; **مَا مَرَرْتُ بِأَحَدٍ إِلَّا زَيْدٌ** *I have passed no one, except Zaid*; **مَا ضَرَبْتُ أَحَدًا إِلَّا عَمْرًا** *I have struck no one but 'Amr.*

Chapter V.

Compound sentences.

§ 99. *Relative sentences* are divided into those which are not added to a noun, and those which are qualificatives of a noun (cf. § 86 c).

a. *Relative sentences not dependent on a noun* are introduced by the inflected and always determinate word **الَّذِي** (cf. § 13 a) *the one, who; that, which, &c.*; or by the uninflected pronoun **مَنْ** (which is

sometimes determinate and sometimes indeterminate)
 = *the one, who; one, who; those, who; such, as* and مَا
 = *that, which; a thing, which*. Ex.: كَفَرُوا بِآيَاتِنَا الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا
 هُم أَصْحَابُ الْمَشْأَمَةِ those, who despise our revelation
 those will be the people on the left hand (الَّذِينَ as the
 subject stands here in the Nom.); اَسْجُدْ لِمَنْ خَلَقْتَ
 طِينًا (the devil said) shall I fall down before one,
 whom thou hast made of clay? (مَنْ stands here in the
 genitive); يَقُولُونَ بِأَفْوَاهِهِمْ مَا لَيْسَ بِقُلُوبِهِمْ they say
 with their mouths a thing which is not in their hearts
 (مَا stands here in the accusative).

b. A relative sentence is added to a substantive
 by means of الَّذِي, only when the principal noun,
 with which الَّذِي has to agree in gender and number,
 is determinate, e. g. ضَرَبْتُ الرَّجُلَ الَّذِي جَاءَ I struck
 the man who came. The reason of this is, because
 الَّذِي originally is not a relative in our sense but a
 demonstrative, and as such always determinate—the
 above sentence means really, I struck this man here, he
 came. Hence on the other hand a relative sentence is
 added without الَّذِي when the principle noun is in-
 determinate, e. g. ضَرَبْتُ رَجُلًا جَاءَ I struck a man,

who came (where "who" is unexpressed in Arabic, prop. "a man, he came").

REM. It is only when the principal noun is merely generically determinate (cf. § 84 b) that الَّذِي is wanting, e. g. كَمَثَلِ الْحِمَارِ يَحْمِلُ أَسْفَارًا *like an (the) ass, which carries books*.

c. The relative sentence, which is properly only a nominal or verbal sentence added to the principal word, contains as a rule a pronoun referring to that word, e. g. الرَّجُلُ الَّذِي أَبُوهُ غَنِيٌّ *the man whose father is rich*; كَانَ لَهُ ابْنٌ سَمِيَ مُحَمَّدًا *he had a son, who was called Muhammed* (in this example the pronoun is contained in the verb); رَجُلٌ يُقَالُ لَهُ زَيْدٌ *a man, who is called Zaid* (prop. of whom is said (he is) Zaid).

REM. In relative sentences, which consist of a nominal sentence, a change is sometimes found, in that the predicate of the relative sentence is coordinated with the word qualified; in such a case the subject of the relative sentence however remains in the nominative, e. g. رَأَيْتُ دَوَابَّ مُخْتَلِفَةً أَلْوَانُهَا *I found animals, of which the species were various* = أَلْوَانُهَا مُخْتَلِفَةٌ.

§ 100. *Sentences denoting a state or condition* form a special class of dependent sentences. A sentence denoting a state (Zustandssatz) consists of:

a. A nominal sentence introduced by the particle وَ, the subject of which has been already mentioned but can also be a fresh one مَاتَتْ وَهِيَ رَاجِعَةٌ إِلَى مَكَّةَ she died, while she was returning to Mecca; مَاتَ زَيْدٌ وَأَبْنُهُ صَغِيرٌ Zaid died, while his son was still young; with a compound nominal sentence سَارَ وَهُوَ يَقْصِدُ الْمَدِينَةَ he journeyed, taking Medina as his goal.

b. Often also a verbal sentence; in this the Imperfect stands either alone, or with a preceding وَقَدْ; when it is a negative sentence either with لَا or مَا, or in the Jussive with لَمْ (as the negative of the Perfect): or the Perfect stands with وَقَدْ or وَكَانَ, when it is negated, with وَمَا, e. g. جَاءَ زَيْدٌ يَخْحَكُ Zaid came (as he was) laughing; قَالَ أَنَّى يَكُونُ لِي غُلَامٌ he (Zacharias) said: how shall I have a son as my wife is barren and I have reached such a great age.

§ 101. In *temporal sentences*, formed by the particle إِذَا when, the perfect stands in the protasis in G*.

the sense of our present or future, e. g. إِذَا رَاضَ يَحْيَى الْأَمْرَ ذَلَّتْ صِعَابُهُ *when Dick does a thing its difficulties are easily surmounted*. مَا also in the meaning of "so long as" takes the perfect after it, e. g. مَا دُمْتُ أَنَا شَاكِرٌ *as long as I live, I am thankful*.

§ 102. In sentences containing a conditional idea, thus after the particles إِنْ *if*, مَنْ *if anyone*, مَا *if anything*, مَهْمَا *if ever anything*, كَيْفَ مَا *how, however*, مَتَى *when*, &c., the Perfect stands in the protasis in the sense of the present or future: and in the apodosis also, e. g. إِنْ فَعَلْتَ ذَلِكَ هَلَكَتَ *if thou doest that, thou wilt perish*; مَنْ جَالَ نَالَ *if one seeks, one finds*.

REM. If the Perfect is to retain its meaning in the protasis, the verb كَانَ is inserted after إِنْ, e. g. إِنْ كَانَ قَمِيصُهُ قَدْ مِنْ قُبْلِ فَصَدَقَتْ *if his jacket has been torn in front, she has spoken the truth*.

§ 103. a. After these same particles the Jussive stands in the protasis and apodosis, e. g. إِنْ تَصَبَّرُوا يُبَدِّدْكُمْ رَبُّكُمْ *if ye endure patiently, God will help you*.

b. The Jussive stands likewise in the apodosis to an imperative protasis, which expresses the meaning

of a conditional, e. g. *عِشْ قَنِعًا تَكُنْ مَلِكًا* *live contentedly* (if thou livest contentedly), *then thou wilt be a king*.

c. The Perfect can also stand in the apodosis to a protasis which has the jussive, e. g. *إِنْ تَصْبِرْ ظَفِرْتَ* *if thou endurest patiently, thou wilt be victorious*. If the sentences are negative, *لَمْ* stands with the jussive, e. g. *إِنْ لَمْ يَبْرَحْ لَمْ أَرْضَ* *if he does not go away, I am not contented*.

REM. Sometimes the apodosis of a conditional sentence is omitted, e. g. *إِنْ كَانَ هَذَا* *if this is so; supply, it is well*.

§ 104. Before the apodosis of a conditional sentence the particle *فَ* is used:

a. when the apodosis is a nominal sentence, e. g. *إِنْ عَصَى فَوَيْلٌ لَهُ* *if he prove himself obstinate, then woe to him*; likewise before sentences with *إِنَّ*, and before interrogative sentences.

b. when the apodosis is a verbal sentence, the Perfect of which should keep the meaning of the perfect (cf. § 102 Rem.), especially when *قَدْ* is used (cf. § 73 e), e. g. *إِنْ أَسْلَمُوا فَقَدْ أَهْتَدَوْا وَإِنْ*

تَوَلَّوْا فَإِنَّمَا عَلَيْكَ الْبَلَاغُ *if they become Muslims, they have come to the right path, and if they turn away, only the bringing of the message is laid upon thee.*

c. when the apodosis is a verbal sentence, which contains an imperfect with one of the particles سَوْفَ, لَنْ, سَ; or which expresses a command or wish, e. g. إِنْ كُنْتَ فِي قَوْمٍ فَأَحْلُبْ فِي إِيَّائِهِمْ *if thou findest thyself among people, then milk into their pail.*

PARADIGMATA.

TABULA I.

Paradigma flexionis verbi sani stirpis I.

Activum

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum				Imperativus
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Jussivus	Imperg. I	Imperg. II
3. masc.	sing.	قَتَلَ	يَقْتُلُ	يَقْتُلُ	يَقْتُلْ	يَقْتُلْ	يَقْتُلْ
3. fem.	"	قَتَلَتْ	تَقْتُلُ	تَقْتُلُ	تَقْتُلْ	تَقْتُلْ	تَقْتُلْ
2. masc.	"	قَتَلْتَ	تَقْتُلُ	تَقْتُلُ	تَقْتُلْ	تَقْتُلْ	تَقْتُلْ
2. fem.	"	قَتَلْتِ	تَقْتُلِينَ	تَقْتُلِي	تَقْتُلِي	تَقْتُلِي	تَقْتُلِي
1.	"	قَتَلْتُ	أَقْتُلُ	أَقْتُلْ	أَقْتُلْ	أَقْتُلْ	أَقْتُلْ

3. masc.	dual.	قتلا	يقتلان	تقتلان	يقتلن	تقتلن	يقتلن	اقتلوا	اقتلن
3. fem.	"	قتلتا	تقتلان	تقتلا	يقتلن	تقتلن	يقتلن	اقتلوا	اقتلن
2.	"	قتلتما	تقتلان	تقتلا	يقتلن	تقتلن	يقتلن	اقتلوا	اقتلن
3. masc.	plur.	قتلوا	يقتلون	يقتلوا	يقتلن	تقتلن	يقتلن	اقتلوا	اقتلن
3. fem.	"	قتلن	يقتلن	يقتلن	يقتلن	تقتلن	يقتلن	اقتلوا	اقتلن
2. masc.	"	قتلتهم	يقتلون	يقتلوا	يقتلن	تقتلن	يقتلن	اقتلوا	اقتلن
2. fem.	"	قتلتن	يقتلن	يقتلن	يقتلن	تقتلن	يقتلن	اقتلوا	اقتلن
1.	"	قتلنا	يقتل	يقتل	يقتل	تقتل	يقتل	اقتلوا	اقتلن

TABULA II.
Paradigma flexionis
Passivi I verbi sani

Persona	Nume- rus	Perfec- tum	Imperfectum		
			Indicativus	Subjunc- tivus	Jussivus
3. masc.	sing.	قُتِلَ	يُقْتَلُ	يُقْتَلْ	يُقْتَلْ
3. fem.	"	قُتِلَتْ	تُقْتَلُ	تُقْتَلْ	تُقْتَلْ
2. masc.	"	قَتِلْتَ	تُقْتَلُ	تُقْتَلْ	تُقْتَلْ
2. fem.	"	قَتِلْتِ	تُقْتَلِينَ	تُقْتَلِيْ	تُقْتَلِيْ
1.	"	قَتِلْتُ	أُقْتَلُ	أُقْتَلْ	أُقْتَلْ
3. masc.	dual.	قُتِلَا	يُقْتَلَانِ	يُقْتَلَا	يُقْتَلَا
3. fem.	"	قُتِلَتَا	تُقْتَلَانِ	تُقْتَلَا	تُقْتَلَا
2.	"	قَتِلْتُمَا	تُقْتَلَانِ	تُقْتَلَا	تُقْتَلَا
3. masc.	plur.	قُتِلُوا	يُقْتَلُونَ	يُقْتَلُوا	يُقْتَلُوا
3. fem.	"	قُتِلْنَ	يُقْتَلْنَ	يُقْتَلْنَ	يُقْتَلْنَ
2. masc.	"	قَتِلْتُمْ	تُقْتَلُونَ	تُقْتَلُوا	تُقْتَلُوا
2. fem.	"	قَتِلْتُنَّ	تُقْتَلْنَ	تُقْتَلْنَ	تُقْتَلْنَ
1.	"	قَتِلْنَا	نُقْتَلُ	نُقْتَلْ	نُقْتَلْ

TABULA III.

Paradigma stirpium verbi quadrilitteralis.

Stirps	Genus	Perfectum	Imperfectum	Imperativus	Participium	Infinitivus
I	Act.	قَطَرَ	يَقْطُرُ	قَطِرْ	مَقْطُرٌ	قَطْرٌ
I	Pass.	قُطِرَ	يُقْطَرُ		مَقْطُورٌ	تَقْطِيرٌ
II	Act.	تَقَطَّرَ	يَتَقَطَّرُ	تَقَطَّرْ	مَتَقَطِّرٌ	تَقْطِيرٌ
II	Pass.	تَقْطِرَ	يَتَقَطَّرُ		مَتَقَطُّورٌ	

TABULA IV.
Paradigma stirpium verbi sani.

	I	II	III	IV	V
Perfectum Activi	قَتَلَ	قَتَلَ	قَاتَلَ	اَقْتَلَ	نَقَلَ
Imperfectum "	يَقْتُلُ	يَقْتُلُ	يُقَاتِلُ	يُقْتَلُ	يَتَقَتَّلُ
Imperativus "	اَقْتُلْ	قَتِلْ	قَاتِلْ	اَقْتِلْ	نَقِلْ
Participium "	قَاتِلٌ	مُقْتَلٌ	مُقَاتِلٌ	مُقْتَلٌ	مَتَقَتِّلٌ
Perfectum Passivi	قَتِلَ	قَتِلَ	قَوِّتِلَ	اَقْتِلَ	نَقِلَ
Imperfectum "	يُقْتَلُ	يُقْتَلُ	يُقَاتَلُ	يُقْتَلُ	يَتَقَتَّلُ
Participium "	مُقْتُولٌ	مُقْتَلٌ	مُقَاتِلٌ	مُقْتَلٌ	مَتَقَتِّلٌ
Infinitivus	قَتْلٌ	تَقْتِيلٌ	مُقَاتَلَةٌ vel قِتَالٌ	اِقْتَالٌ	نَقْلٌ

	·	VI	VII	VIII	IX	X
Perfectum	Activi	تَقَاتَلَ	اِنْقَتَلَ	اِقْتَتَلَ	اِقْتَلَّ	اِسْتَقْتَلَ
Imperfectum	"	يَتَقَاتَلُ	يَنْقَتِلُ	يَقْتَتِلُ	يَقْتَلُّ	يَسْتَقْتِلُ
Imperativus	"	تَقَاتَلْ	اِنْقَتِلْ	اِقْتَتِلْ	اِقْتَلْ	اِسْتَقْتِلْ
Participium	"	مَتَقَاتِلٌ	مَنْقَتِلٌ	مَقْتَتِلٌ	مَقْتَلٌ	مَسْتَقْتِلٌ
Perfectum	Passivi	تُقَاتِلُ	اِنْقَتِلْ	اِقْتَتِلْ	اِقْتَلْ	اِسْتَقْتَلْ
Imperfectum	"	يَتَقَاتَلُ	يَنْقَتِلُ	يَقْتَتِلُ	يَقْتَلُّ	يَسْتَقْتِلُ
Participium	"	مَتَقَاتِلٌ	مَنْقَتِلٌ	مَقْتَتِلٌ	مَقْتَلٌ	مَسْتَقْتِلٌ
Infinitivus		تَقَاتَلٌ	اِنْقَتَالٌ	اِقْتَتَالٌ	اِقْتِلَالٌ	اِسْتَقْتَالٌ

TABULA V.
Paradigma flexionis
Activi I verbi mediae geminatae

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum			Imperativus
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Jussivus	
3. masc. sing.		فَرَّ	يَفِرُّ	يَفِرَّ	يَفِرَّ (يَفِرْ)	
3. fem.	"	فَرَّتْ	تَفِرُّ	تَفِرَّ	تَفِرَّ (تَفِرْ)	
2. masc.	"	فَرَرَتْ	تَفِرُّ	تَفِرَّ	تَفِرَّ (تَفِرْ)	اِفِرْ (اِفِرْ)
2. fem.	"	فَرَرَتْ	تَفِرِينَ	تَفِرِي	تَفِرِي	اِفِرِي (اِفِرِي)
1.	"	فَرَرْتُ	اَفِرُّ	اَفِرَّ	اَفِرَّ (اَفِرْ)	
3. masc. dual.		فَرَا	يَفِرَانِ	يَفِرَا	يَفِرَا	
3. fem.	"	فَرَتَا	تَفِرَانِ	تَفِرَا	تَفِرَا	
2.	"	فَرَرْتُمَا	تَفِرَانِ	تَفِرَا	تَفِرَا	اِفِرَا (اِفِرَا)
3. masc. plur.		فَرَوْا	يَفِرُونَ	يَفِرُوا	يَفِرُوا	
3. fem.	"	فَرَرْنَ	يَفِرْنَ	يَفِرْنَ	يَفِرْنَ	
2. masc.	"	فَرَرْتُمْ	تَفِرُونَ	تَفِرُوا	تَفِرُوا	اِفِرُوا (اِفِرُوا)
2. fem.	"	فَرَرْتُنَّ	تَفِرْنَ	تَفِرْنَ	تَفِرْنَ	اِفِرْنَ (اِفِرْنَ)
1.	"	فَرَرْنَا	نَفِرُّ	نَفِرَّ	نَفِرَّ (نَفِرْ)	

TABULA VI.

Paradigma flexionis

Passivi I verbi mediae geminatae

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum		
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Jussivus
3. masc. sing.		فِرَّ	يُفِرُّ	يُفِرَّ	(بُفِرَّ) يُفِرِّرْ
3. fem.	"	فِرَّتْ	تُفِرُّ	تُفِرَّ	تُفِرِّرْ etc.
2. masc.	"	فِرَرْتَ	تُفِرُّ	تُفِرَّ	تُفِرِّرْ
2. fem.	"	فِرَرْتِ	تُفِرِّينَ	تُفِرِّيْ	تُفِرِّيْ
1.	"	فِرَرْتُ	أُفِرُّ	أُفِرَّ	أُفِرِّرْ
3. masc. dual.		فِرَّا	يُفِرَّانِ	يُفِرَّا	يُفِرَّا
3. fem.	"	فِرَّتَا	تُفِرَّانِ	تُفِرَّا	تُفِرَّا
2.	"	فِرَرْتُمَا	تُفِرَّانِ	تُفِرَّا	تُفِرَّا
3. masc. plur.		فِرُّوا	يُفِرُّونَ	يُفِرُّوا	يُفِرُّوا
3. fem.	"	فِرَرْنَ	يُفِرَّرْنَ	يُفِرَّرْنَ	يُفِرَّرْنَ
2. masc.	"	فِرَرْتُمْ	تُفِرُّونَ	تُفِرُّوا	تُفِرُّوا
2. fem.	"	فِرَرْتُنَّ	تُفِرَّرْنَ	تُفِرَّرْنَ	تُفِرَّرْنَ
1.	"	فِرَرْنَا	نُفِرُّ	نُفِرَّ	نُفِرِّرْ

TABULA VII

Paradigma stirpium verbi mediae geminatae contractarum.

	I	III	IV	VI	VII	VIII	X
Perfectum Activi	فَرَّ	فَارَّ	افَرَّ	تَفَارَّ	انْفَرَّ	افْتَرَّ	استَفَرَّ
Imperfectum "	يَفِرُّ	يِفَارُّ	يِفِرُّ	يَتَفَارُّ	يَنْفِرُّ	يَفْتِرُّ	يَسْتَفِرُّ
Imperativus "	افْرِ	فَارِّ	افِرِّ	تَفَارِّ	انْفِرِّ	افْتِرِّ	اسْتَفِرِّ
Participium "	فَارٌّ	مِفَارٌّ	مِفِرٌّ	مَتَفَارٌّ	مَنْفِرٌّ	مَفْتِرٌّ	مَسْتَفِرٌّ
Perfectum Passivi	فُرِّ	فُرِرَ	افُرِّ	تَفُرِرَ	انْفُرَ	افْتُرَ	اسْتَفُرَ
Imperfectum "	يُفَرُّ	يِفَارُّ	يُفَرُّ	يَتَفَارُّ	يَنْفَرُّ	يَفْتَرُّ	يَسْتَفَرُّ
Participium "	مُفَرٌّ	مِفَارٌّ	مُفَرٌّ	مَتَفَارٌّ	مَنْفَرٌّ	مَفْتَرٌّ	مَسْتَفَرٌّ
Infinitivus "	فَرٌّ	فَرٌّ	افَرٌّ	نَفَارٌ	انْفِرَارٌ	افْتِرَارٌ	اسْتِفِرَارٌ

TABULA VIII

Paradigma flexionis verborum

primae radicalis , et ی

		Verbi pr. , Imperf. 1	Verbi pr. , Imperf. a	Verbi pr. , sani	Verbi pr. ی
I. Perf.	Act.	وَصَدَ	وَدَعَ	وَسَخَ	يَسَرُ
	Imperf.	يَصِلُ	يَدَعُ	يُوسِخُ	يَيْسِرُ
	Imperat.	صِلْ	دَعْ	(أَوْسِنْ, اِجْلِ)	اَيَسِرْ
	Imperf. Pass.	يُوصَلُ	يُودَعُ	يُوسَخُ	يُوسَرُ
	Infinit.	صِلَّةٌ	دَعَةٌ, وَدَعٌ	وَسَخٌ	يَسَرٌ
IV. Perf.	Act.	أَوْصَدَ	أَوْدَعَ	أَوْسَخَ	أَيَسَرَ
	Imperf.	يُوصِلُ	يُودِعُ	يُوسِخُ	يُويسِرُ
	Partic.	مُوصِلٌ	مُودِعٌ	مُوسِخٌ	مُويسِرٌ
	Infinit.	اِيصَالٌ	اِيدَاعٌ	اِيسَاخٌ	اِيسَارٌ
III. Perf.	Act.	اِتَّصَلَ	اِتَّدَعَ	اِتَّسَخَ	اِتَّسَرَ
	Imperf.	يَتَّصِلُ	يَتَّدَعُ	يَتَّسِخُ	يَتَّسِرُ
	Perf. Pass.	اُتَّصِلَ	اُتَّدِعَ	اُتَّسِخَ	اُتَّسِرَ
X. Perf.	Act.	اِسْتَوْصَلَ	اِسْتَوْدَعَ	اِسْتَوْسَخَ	اِسْتَيْسَرَ
	Infinit.	اِسْتِيصَالٌ	اِسْتِيدَاعٌ	اِسْتِيسَاخٌ	اِسْتِيسَارٌ

TABULA IX.

Paradigma flexionis
Activi I verbi mediae radicalis و

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum			Imperativus
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Jussivus	
3. masc. sing.		قَالَ	يَقُولُ	يَقُولَ	يَقُلْ	
3. fem.	"	قَالَتْ	تَقُولُ	تَقُولَ	تَقُلْ	
2. masc.	"	قُلْتَ	تَقُولُ	نَقُولُ	تَقُلْ	قُلْ
2. fem.	"	قُلْتِ	تَقُولِينَ	تَقُولِي	تَقُولِي	قُولِي
1.	"	قُلْتُ	أَقُولُ	أَقُولَ	أَقُلْ	
3. masc. dual.		قَالَا	يَقُولَانِ	يَقُولَا	يَقُولَا	
3. fem.	"	قَالَتَا	تَقُولَانِ	تَقُولَا	تَقُولَا	
2.	"	قُلْتُمَا	تَقُولَانِ	تَقُولَا	تَقُولَا	قُولَا
3. masc. plur.		قَالُوا	يَقُولُونَ	يَقُولُوا	يَقُولُوا	
3. fem.	"	قُلْنَ	يَقُلْنَ	يَقُلْنَ	يَقُلْنَ	
2. masc.	"	قُلْتُمْ	تَقُولُونَ	تَقُولُوا	تَقُولُوا	قُولُوا
2. fem.	"	قُلْتُنَّ	تَقُلْنَ	تَقُلْنَ	تَقُلْنَ	قُلْنَ
1.	"	قُلْنَا	نَقُولُ	نَقُولَ	نَقُلْ	

TABULA X.

Paradigma flexionis

Activi I verbi mediae radicalis ی

Persona	Nume- rus	Perfec- tum	Imperfectum			Impera- tivus
			Indicati- vus	Subjunc- tivus	Jussivus	
3. masc. sing.		سَارَ	يَسِيرُ	يَسِيرَ	يَسِرْ	
3. fem.	"	سَارَتْ	تَسِيرُ	تَسِيرَ	تَسِرْ	
2. masc.	"	سِرْتُ	تَسِيرُ	تَسِيرَ	تَسِرْ	سِرْ
2. fem.	"	سِرْتِ	تَسِيرِينَ	تَسِيرِي	تَسِيرِي	سِيرِي
1.	"	سِرْتُ	أَسِيرُ	أَسِيرَ	أَسِرْ	
3. masc. dual.		سَارَا	يَسِيرَانِ	يَسِيرَا	يَسِيرَا	
3. fem.	"	سَارَتَا	تَسِيرَانِ	تَسِيرَا	تَسِيرَا	
2.	"	سِرْتُمَا	تَسِيرَانِ	تَسِيرَا	تَسِيرَا	سِيرَا
3. masc. plur.		سَارُوا	يَسِيرُونَ	يَسِيرُوا	يَسِيرُوا	
3. fem.	"	سِرْنَ	يَسِرْنَ	يَسِرْنَ	يَسِرْنَ	
2. masc.	"	سِرْتُمْ	تَسِيرُونَ	تَسِيرُوا	تَسِيرُوا	سِيرُوا
2. fem.	"	سِرْتُنَّ	تَسِرْنَ	تَسِرْنَ	تَسِرْنَ	سِرْنَ
1.	"	سِرْنَا	نَسِيرُ	نَسِيرَ	نَسِرْ	

TABULA XI.

Paradigma flexionis

Passivi I verbi mediae radicalis و vel ی

Persona	Nume- rus	Perfec- tum	Imperfectum		
			Indicativus	Subjunc- tivus	Jussivus
3. masc. sing.		دِيمَ	يُدَامُ	يُدَامَ	يُدَمْ
3. fem.	"	دِيَمَتَ	تُدَامُ	تُدَامَ	تُدَمْ
2. masc.	"	دِمَتَ	تُدَامُ	تُدَامَ	تُدَمْ
2. fem.	"	دِمَتِ	تُدَامِينِ	تُدَامِي	تُدَامِي
1.	"	دِمْتُ	أُدَامُ	أُدَامَ	أُدَمْ
3. masc. dual.		دِيَمَا	يُدَامَانِ	يُدَامَا	يُدَامَا
3. fem.	"	دِيَمَتَا	تُدَامَانِ	تُدَامَا	تُدَامَا
2.	"	دِمْتُمَا	تُدَامَانِ	تُدَامَا	تُدَامَا
3. masc. plur.		دِيَهُوَا	يُدَامُونِ	يُدَامُوا	يُدَامُوا
3. fem.	"	دِمْنِ	يُدَمْنِ	يُدَمْنِ	يُدَمْنِ
2. masc.	"	دِمْتُمْ	تُدَامُونِ	تُدَامُوا	تُدَامُوا
2. fem.	"	دِمْتُنَّ	تُدَمْنِ	تُدَمْنِ	تُدَمْنِ
1.	"	دِمْنَا	نُدَامُ	نُدَامَ	نُدَمْ

TABULA XII.

Paradigma stirpium verborum mediae, et irregularium.

	I	I	I	IV	VII	VIII	IX
	Verb. med.	Verb. med.	Verb. med.	Verb. med.	Verb. med.	Verb. med.	Verb. med.
	فَعَلَ د	فَعِلَ د	فَعَلَ ي	فَعَلَ ي	فَعَلَ ي	فَعَلَ ي	فَعَلَ ي
Perfect. Act.	قَالَ	خَافَ	سَارَ	أَقَادَ	أَذْفَادَ	أَقْتَادَ	اسْتَقَادَ
(II. P. masc. S.	قُلْتُ	خَفْتُ	سَرْتُ	أَقَدْتُ	أَذْفَدْتُ	أَقْتَدْتُ	اسْتَقَدْتُ
Imperf. "	يَقُولُ	يَخَافُ	يَسِيرُ	يُقِيدُ	يَنْفَادُ	يَقْتَادُ	يَسْتَقِيدُ
Imperat. "	قُلْ	خَفْ	سِرْ	أَقِدْ	أَذْفُدْ	أَقْتُدْ	اسْتَقُدْ
Particip. "	قَائِلٌ	خَائِفٌ	سَائِرٌ	مُقِيدٌ	مَنْفَادٌ	مَقْتَادٌ	مُسْتَقِيدٌ
Perfect. Pass.	قِيلَ	جِيفَ	سِيرَ	أُقِيدَ	أُنْفَدَ	أُقْتَبَدَ	أُسْتَقِيدَ
Imperf. "	يُقَالُ	يُخَافُ	يُسَارُ	يُقَادُ	يُنْفَادُ	يُقْتَادُ	يُسْتَقَادُ
Particip. "	مَقُولٌ	مُخَوِّفٌ	مَسِيرٌ	مُقَادٌ	مُنْفَادٌ	مُقْتَادٌ	مُسْتَقَادٌ
Infinitivus	قَوْلٌ	خَوْفٌ	سَيْرٌ	إِقَادَةٌ	إِنْفَادٌ	إِقْتِيَادٌ	اسْتِقَادَةٌ

TABULA XIII

Paradigma flexionis

Activi I verbi ultimae و (فَعَلَ)

Persona	Nume- rus	Perfec- tum	Imperfectum			Impera- tivus
			Indica- tivus	Subjunc- tivus	Jussivus	
3. masc. sing.		عَزَا	يَعْزُو	يَعْزُو	يَعْزُ	
3. fem.	"	عَزَتْ	تَعْزُو	تَعْزُو	تَعْزُ	
2. masc.	"	عَزَوْتَ	تَعْزُو	تَعْزُو	تَعْزُ	أَعْزُ
2. fem.	"	عَزَوْتِ	تَعْزِينَ	تَعْزِي	تَعْزِي	أَعْزِي
1.	"	عَزَوْتُ	أَعْزُو	أَعْزُو	أَعْزُ	
3. masc. dual.		عَزَا	يَعْزَوَانِ	يَعْزُوا	بَعْزُوا	
3. fem.	"	عَزَتَا	تَعْزَوَانِ	تَعْزُوا	تَعْزُوا	
2.	"	عَزَوْتُمَا	تَعْزَوَانِ	تَعْزُوا	تَعْزُوا	أَعْزُوا
3. masc. plur.		عَزَوْا	يَعْزُونَ	يَعْزُوا	يَعْزُوا	
3. fem.	"	عَزَوْنَ	يَعْزُونَ	يَعْزُونَ	يَعْزُونَ	
2. masc.	"	عَزَوْتُمْ	تَعْزُونَ	تَعْزُوا	تَعْزُوا	أَعْزُوا
2 fem.	"	عَزَوْتُنَّ	تَعْزُونَ	تَعْزُونَ	تَعْزُونَ	أَعْزُونَ
1.	"	عَزَوْنَا	نَعْزُو	نَعْزُو	نَعْزُ	

TABULA XIV.

Paradigma flexionis

Activi I verbi ultimae (فَعَلَ) ي

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum			Imperativus
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Jussivus	
3. masc. sing.		رَمَى	يَرْمِي	يَرْمِي	يَرْمِ	
3. fem.	"	رَمَتْ	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِ	
2. masc.	"	رَمَيْتَ	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِ	اَرْمِ
2. fem.	"	رَمَيْتِ	تَرْمِينَ	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِي	اَرْمِي
1.	"	رَمَيْتُ	اَرْمِي	اَرْمِي	اَرْمِ	
3. masc. dual.		رَمَيَا	يَرْمِيَانِ	يَرْمِيَا	يَرْمِيَا	
3. fem.	"	رَمَتَا	تَرْمِيَانِ	تَرْمِيَا	تَرْمِيَا	
2.	"	رَمَيْتُمَا	تَرْمِيَانِ	تَرْمِيَا	تَرْمِيَا	اَرْمِيَا
3. masc. plur.		رَمَوْا	يَرْمُونَ	يَرْمُوا	يَرْمُوا	
3. fem.	"	رَمَيْنَ	يَرْمِينَ	يَرْمِينَ	يَرْمِينَ	
2. masc.	"	رَمَيْتُمْ	تَرْمُونَ	تَرْمُوا	تَرْمُوا	اَرْمُوا
2. fem.	"	رَمَيْتُنَّ	تَرْمِينَ	تَرْمِينَ	تَرْمِينَ	اَرْمِينَ
1.	"	رَمَيْنَا	نَرْمِي	نَرْمِي	نَرْمِ	

TABULA XV.

Paradigma flexionis

Activi I verbis ultimae و vel ی (فَعِلَ)

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum		Jussivus	Imperativus
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus		
3. masc. sing.		رَضِيَ	يَرْضَى	يَرْضَى	يَرْضَ	
3. fem.	-	رَضِيَتْ	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَ	
2. masc.	"	رَضَيْتَ	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَ	اِرْضَ
2. fem.	"	رَضَيْتِ	تَرْضَيْنَ	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَى	اِرْضَى
1.	,	رَضِيتُ	أَرْضَى	أَرْضَى	أَرْضَ	
3. masc. dual.		رَضِيَا	يَرْضَبَانِ	يَرْضَيَا	يَرْضَيَا	
3. fem.	.	رَضِيَتَا	تَرْضَيَانِ	تَرْضَيَا	تَرْضَيَا	
2.	-	رَضَيْتُمَا	تَرْضَيَانِ	تَرْضَيَا	تَرْضَيَا	اِرْضَيَا
3. masc. plur.		رَضَوْا	يَرْضَوْنَ	يَرْضَوْا	يَرْضَوْا	
3. fem.	"	رَضِينَ	يَرْضُنَّ	يَرْضِينَ	يَرْضِينَ	
2. masc.	"	رَضَيْتُمْ	تَرْضَوْنَ	تَرْضَوْا	تَرْضَوْا	اِرْضَوْا
2. fem.	"	رَضَيْتُنَّ	تَرْضَيْنَ	تَرْضَيْنَ	تَرْضَيْنَ	اِرْضَيْنَ
1.	"	رَضِينَا	نَرْضَى	نَرْضَى	نَرْضَ	

TABULA XVI.

Paradigma flexionis

Passivi I verbi ultimae و vel في

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum		
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Jussivus
3. masc.	sing.	قُضِيَ	يُقَضَّى	يُقَضَّى	يُقَضَّ
3. fem.	"	قُضِيَتْ	تُقَضَّى	تُقَضَّى	تُقَضَّ
2. masc.	"	قُضِيْتَ	تُقَضَّى	تُقَضَّى	تُقَضَّ
2. fem.	"	قُضِيْتِ	تُقَضَّيْنِ	تُقَضَّى	تُقَضَّى
1.	"	قُضِيتُ	أُقَضَّى	أُقَضَّى	أُقَضَّ
3. masc.	dual.	قُضِيََا	يُقَضَّيَانِ	يُقَضَّيَا	يُقَضَّبَا
3. fem.	"	قُضِيَتَا	تُقَضَّيَانِ	تُقَضَّيَا	تُقَضَّبَا
2.	"	قُضِيْتُمَا	تُقَضَّيَانِ	تُقَضَّيَا	تُقَضَّبَا
3. masc.	plur.	قُضُوا	يُقَضَّرُونَ	يُقَضَّوْا	يُقَضَّوْا
3. fem.	"	قُضِيْنَ	يُقَضَّيْنَ	يُقَضَّيْنَ	يُقَضَّيْنَ
2. masc.	"	قُضِيْتُمْ	تُقَضَّرُونَ	تُقَضَّوْا	تُقَضَّوْا
2. fem.	"	قُضِيْتُنَّ	تُقَضَّيْنَ	تُقَضَّيْنَ	تُقَضَّيْنَ
1.	"	قُضِبْنَا	دُقَضَّى	نُقَضَّى	نُقَضَّ

TABULA XVII.

Paradigma stirpium verborum ultimae et ی

	I verbi ult. و فَعَلَ	I verbi ult. ی فَعَلَ ی	I verbi ult. و فَعَلَ ی	II verbi ult. و فَعَلَ ی	III verbi ult. و فَعَلَ ی	IV verbi ult. و فَعَلَ ی
Perfectum Activi	فَعَلَ	فَعَلَ	فَعَلَ	فَعَلَ	فَعَلَ	فَعَلَ
Imperfectum	فَعْلٌ	فَعْلٌ	فَعْلٌ	فَعْلٌ	فَعْلٌ	فَعْلٌ
Imperativus	فَعْلُ	فَعْلُ	فَعْلُ	فَعْلُ	فَعْلُ	فَعْلُ
Participium	فَعْلٌ	فَعْلٌ	فَعْلٌ	فَعْلٌ	فَعْلٌ	فَعْلٌ
Perfectum Passivi	فَعِلَ	فَعِلَ	فَعِلَ	فَعِلَ	فَعِلَ	فَعِلَ
Imperfectum	فَعِلٌ	فَعِلٌ	فَعِلٌ	فَعِلٌ	فَعِلٌ	فَعِلٌ
Participium	فَعِلٌ	فَعِلٌ	فَعِلٌ	فَعِلٌ	فَعِلٌ	فَعِلٌ
Infinitivus	فَعْلٌ	فَعْلٌ	فَعْلٌ	فَعْلٌ	فَعْلٌ	فَعْلٌ

	V verbi ult. , vel ی	VI verbi ult. , vel ی	VII verbi ult. , vel ی	VIII verbi ult. , vel ی	X verbi ult. , vel ی
Perfectum Activi	تَقَضَّى	تَقَاضَى	اِنْقَضَى	اِقْتَضَى	اِسْتَقْضَى
Imperfectum "	يَتَقَضَّى	يَتَقَاضَى	يَنْقَضَى	يَقْتَضَى	يَسْتَقْضَى
Imperativus "	تَقْضُ	تَقَاضُ	اِنْقُضْ	اِقْتُضْ	اِسْتَقْضِ
Participium "	مَتَقَضٍّ	مَتَقَاضٍ	مَنْقُضٌ	مَقْتُضٌ	مَسْتَقْضٌ
Perfectum Passivi	تَقْضِيَ	تَقْضَوُ	اِنْقَضِيَ	اِقْتَضِيَ	اِسْتَقْضِيَ
Imperfectum "	يَتَقْضَى	يَتَقَاضَى	يَنْقَضَى	يَقْتَضَى	يَسْتَقْضَى
Participium "	مَتَقْضٍ	مَتَقَاضٍ	مَنْقُضٍ	مَقْتُضٍ	مَسْتَقْضٍ
Infinitivus	تَقْضَ	تَقَاضَ	اِنْقِضَاً	اِقْتِضَاً	اِسْتِغْضَاً

TABULA XVIII.

Paradigma flexionis nominis

a) generis masculini

α) triptoti

	indereterminati	determinati cum articulo	determinati in statu constructo
Sing. Nom.	قَصَابٌ	الْقَصَابُ	قَصَابٌ
Gen.	قَصَابٍ	الْقَصَابِ	قَصَابٍ
Acc.	قَصَابًا	الْقَصَابَ	قَصَابًا
Dual Nom.	قَصَابَانِ	الْقَصَابَانِ	قَصَابَا
Gen.-Acc.	قَصَابَيْنِ	الْقَصَابَيْنِ	قَصَابَيَّ
Plur. Nom.	قَصَابُونَ	الْقَصَابُونَ	قَصَابُوا (قَصَابُوْا)
Gen.-Acc.	قَصَابِينَ	الْقَصَابِينَ	قَصَابِيَّ

β) diptoti

Sing. Nom.	آخِرٌ	الْآخِرُ	آخِرٌ
Gen.	آخِرٍ	الْآخِرِ	آخِرٍ
Acc.	آخَرَ	الْآخَرَ	آخَرَ
Dual Nom.	آخِرَانِ	الْآخِرَانِ	آخِرَا
Gen.-Acc.	آخِرَيْنِ	الْآخِرَيْنِ	آخِرَيَّ

	indeterminati	determinati cum articulo	determinati in statu constructo
Plur. Nom.	آخِرُونَ	الْآخِرُونَ	آخِرُوا (آخِرُو)
Gen.-Acc.	آخِرِينَ	الْآخِرِينَ	آخِرِي

TABULA XIX.

b) generis feminini

α) triptoti

Sing. Nom.	سَاعَةٌ	السَّاعَةُ	سَاعَةُ
Gen.	سَاعَةٍ	السَّاعَةِ	سَاعَةٍ
Acc.	سَاعَةً	السَّاعَةَ	سَاعَةً
Dual Nom.	سَاعَتَانِ	السَّاعَتَانِ	سَاعَتَا
Gen.-Acc.	سَاعَتَيْنِ	السَّاعَتَيْنِ	سَاعَتَيِ
Plur. Nom.	سَاعَاتُ	السَّاعَاتُ	سَاعَاتُ
Gen.-Acc.	سَاعَاتٍ	السَّاعَاتِ	سَاعَاتِ

β) diptoti.

Sing. Nom.	مِئَةٌ	ceterum idem
Gen.-Acc.	مِئَةٍ	

TABULA XX.

c) generis masculini in ـ desinentis.

	indeter- minati	determinati cum articulo	determinati in statu constructo
Sing. Nom.-Gen.	قَاضٍ	القَاضِي	قَاضِي
Acc.	قَاضِيًا	القَاضِيَّ	قَاضِيَّ
Dual Nom.	قَاضِيَانِ	القَاضِيَانِ	قَاضِيَا
Gen.-Acc.	قَاضِيَيْنِ	القَاضِيَيْنِ	قَاضِيَيْنِ
Plur. Nom.	قَاضُونَ	القَاضُونَ	قَاضُوا (قَاضُوا)
Gen.-Acc.	قَاضِينَ	القَاضِينَ	قَاضِي

d) nominis in ـى, ـا desinentis.

α) triptoti.

Sing. Nom.- Gen.-Acc. }	مُصْطَفًى	المُصْطَفَى	مُصْطَفًى
Dual Nom.	مُصْطَفَيَانِ	المُصْطَفَيَانِ	مُصْطَفَيَا
Gen.-Acc.	مُصْطَفَيَيْنِ	المُصْطَفَيَيْنِ	مُصْطَفَيَيْنِ
Plur. Nom.	مُصْطَفَوْنَ	المُصْطَفَوْنَ	مُصْطَفَوْ (مُصْطَفَرُوا)
Gen.-Acc.	مُصْطَفَيْرٍ	المُصْطَفَيْرِ	مُصْطَفَيْرٍ

	indeter- minati	determinati cum articulo	determinati in statu constructo
Sing. Nom.- Gen.-Acc. }	عَصَا	الْعَصَا	عَصَا
Dual Nom.	عَصَوَانِ	الْعَصَوَانِ	عَصَوَا
β) diptoti.			
Sing. Nom.- Gen.-Acc. }	ذِكْرَى	الذِّكْرَى	ذِكْرَى
id.	ذُنْيَا	الذُّنْيَا	ذُنْيَا

TABULA XXI.

Paradigma nominis cum suffixis.

a) *nominis masc. in singulari positi* قَصَّابٌ; *fem.* جَارِيَةٌ.

cum suffixo 1. pers. sing.	جَارِيَتِي	fem.	قَصَّابِي
" " 2. " " masc.	قَصَّابُكَ		
" " 2. " " fem.	قَصَّابُكِ		
" " 3. " " masc.	قَصَّابُهُ	(gen. قَصَّابِهِ)	
" " 3. " " fem.	قَصَّابُهَا		
" " 2. " dualis	قَصَّابُكُمَا		
" " 3. " "	قَصَّابُهُمَا	(gen. قَصَّابِهِمَا)	
" " 1. " pluralis	قَصَّابُنَا		
" " 2. " " msc.	قَصَّابُكُمْ		
" " 2. " " fem.	قَصَّابُكُنَّ		
" " 3. " " msc.	قَصَّابُهُمْ	(gen. قَصَّابِهِمْ)	
" " 3. " " fem.	قَصَّابُهُنَّ	(gen. قَصَّابِهِنَّ)	

b) *nominis in duali positi.*

Nominativus cum suffixo	1. pers. sing.	قَصَابَايَ
"	"	"
"	2. "	" msc. قَصَابَاكَ etc.
Gen.-Acc.	1. "	قَصَابَايَ
"	"	"
"	2. "	" msc. قَصَابَيْكَ
"	3. "	" قَصَابَيْهِ
"	3. "	" fem. قَصَابَيْهَا etc.

c) *nominis masculini in plurali positi.*

Nominativus cum suffixo	1. pers. sing.	قَصَابِي
"	"	"
"	2. "	" msc. قَصَائِرُكَ etc.
Gen.-Acc.	1. "	قَصَابِي
"	"	"
"	2. "	" msc. قَصَائِرِكَ
"	3. "	" msc. قَصَائِرِهِ
"	3. "	" fem. قَصَائِرِهَا etc.

d) *nominis feminini in plurali positi.*

Nom.-Gen.-Acc. cum suff.	1. pers. sing.	سَاعَاتِي
Nominativus	"	"
"	2. "	" msc. سَاعَاتِكَ
"	3. "	" " سَاعَاتِهِ etc.
Gen.-Acc.	2. "	" " سَاعَاتِكَ
"	3. "	" " سَاعَاتِهَا etc.

LITTERATURA ARABICA.

LITTERATURA.

Arabum litteratura ingens; at permulti libri per saecula amissi; magna pars in bibliothecis exstat, de quibus catalogos manuscriptorum licet consulere. E librorum impressorum numero, quorum multi in Oriente imprimis Bülâkı prope a Cahira in lucem prodierunt, quosdam hic enumerare placuit. Tituli librorum quos titonibus praeceteris commendare juvat, crucibus notati, opera illustriora asteriscis insignita. Scriptorum inclytorum nominibus annum mortis (exempli gratia. 646 H., inc. 26. apr. 1248, h. e. anno Hejrae 646, qui incipit die etc.) addidimus. — De libris nuper in Oriente impressis conf. „Perthes, Verzeichnis der von mir aus dem Orient eingeführten arabischen Bücher“, sive „E. J Brill, Catalogue périodique de livres orientaux“.

A. HISTORIA LITTERARIA.

† Bibliotheca orientalis. Manuel de Bibliographie orientale. I. contenant les livres arabes, persans et turcs imprimés depuis l'invention de l'imprimerie jusqu'à nos jours tant en Europe qu'en Orient etc. par J. Th. Zenker. Leipzig 1846. — Bibliotheca orientalis. Manuel de Bibliographie orientale. II. contenant 1. supplément du premier volume. 2. Littérature de l'Orient chrétien 3. Littérature de l'Inde etc. Par J. Th. Zenker. Leipzig 1861.

† (Euting) Katalog der kaiserlichen Universitäts- und Landesbibliothek in Strassburg. Arabische Literatur. Strassburg 1877. 4^o.

Literaturgeschichte der Araber. Von ihrem Beginne bis zu Ende des zwölften Jahrhunderts der Hidschret. Von Hammer-Purjstall. 7 Bande. Wien 1850—56 (quod opus, cum auctoris judicis non raro errores sint admixti, lectorem diligentem criticum requirit).

* Lexicon bibliographicum et encyclopaedicum a Mustapha ben Abdallah Katib Jelebi dicto et nomine *Haji Khalfa* († 1658) celebrato compositum. Ad codicum Vindobonensium Parisiensium et Berolii-

nensis fidem primum edidit latine verit et commentario indicibusque instruxit *Gustavus Flugel*. Leipzig-London 1835—1858. 7 vol. 4^o.

• *Kitāb al-Fihrist* (auct. Ibn abi Ya'kūb al-nadīm; scripsit anno 377 H. inc. 3 mai. 987) mit Anmerkungen herausgegeben von *Gustav Flugel*. Nach dessen Tode besorgt von *Johannes Rodiger* und *August Muller*. Zwei Bände Leipzig 1871—2

The biographical dictionary of illustrious men chiefly at the beginning of Islamism by Abu Zakariya Jahya el-Nawawi († 676 H. = 1277) edited by *Ferd. Wustenfeld* Gottingen 1842—47 (conf. über das Leben und die Schriften des . . . el-Nawawi idem. Gottingen 1849 aus dem vierten Bande der Abhandl. d. kgl. Ges. d. Wiss. zu Gott.).

Ibn Challican, Vitae illustrium virorum. E codd. nunc primum arabice edidit varus lectionibus. indicibusque locupletissimis instruxit *Ferd. Wustenfeld*. Gottingae 1835—40, 4^o. — Ibn Ḥallikān († 681 H., inc. 11 apr. 1282) 2. vol. Bulak 1275; alt. ed. 1299. — Ibn Khallikan's biographical dictionary, translated from the arabic by Baron *Mac Guckin de Slane*. 4 vol. Paris-London 1843—71. 4^o.

B. CHRESTOMATHIAE.

† Chrestomathia arabica quam e libris Mss. vel impressis rarioribus collectam edidit *Fr. A. Arnold* Pars I. Textum continens. Pars II. Glossarium continens Halis 1853.

† Chrestomathie élémentaire de l'Arabe littéral avec un glossaire par *H. Dèrenbourg* et *J. Spiro*. Paris 1885.

† Chrestomathie Arabe, ou extraits de divers écrivains Arabes, tant en prose qu'en vers à l'usage des élèves de l'école spéciale des langues orientales vivantes. par *A. J. Sylvestre de Sacy*. II. éd. corr. et augm. Paris 1827. 3 vol.; Tome IV Anthologie grammaticale arabe Paris 1829.

Joh. Godofr. Lud. Kosegarten Chrestomathia arabica ex codicibus manuscriptis Paris. Goth. et Berol. collecta atque tum adscriptis vocalibus, cum additis lexico et adnotationibus explanata. Lipsiae 1828.

Georg. Guil. Freytag, Chrestomathia arabica, grammatica historica in usum scholarum Arabicarum ex codd. ineditis conscripta. 8^o maj. Bonnae 1834.

- Thier und Mensch vor dem König der Genien. Ein arabisches Märchen aus den Schriften der lauterer Bruder in Basra im Urtext herausgegeben von *Fr. Dieterici*. 2. Ausgabe. Leipzig 1881. — Arabisch-deutsches Wörterbuch zum Koran und Thier und Mensch von *Fr. Dieterici*. Leipzig, 1881.
- Girgass et de Rosen*. Arabische Chrestomathie. St. Petersburg 1875. 1876 (russice)
- An arabic reading-book compiled by *W. Wright*. Part first. The texts. London 1870.

C. OPERA GRAMMATICA etc.

a ab Orientalibus conscripta (conf. de intus studii grammatici apud Arabes:

- * Die grammatischen Schulen der Araber nach den Quellen bearbeitet von *G. Flügel*. Erste Abthl. Leipzig 1862. Abhandlungen der Deutschen Morgenl. Ges. II. Band. Nr. 4.)
- * *al-Muzhir* fi 'ulūm el-luga, Encyclopaedia philologica auctore Jalāl al-dīn al-Suyūtī († 911 H., inc. 4 jun. 1505). Bulak 1282.
- * Le livre de Sībawīhi, traité de grammaire arabe par Sībawīhi, dit *Sībawīhi* († 180 H., inc. 16 mai. 796). Texte arabe publié d'après les manuscrits du Caire, de l'Escurial, d'Oxford, de Paris, de St. Pétersbourg et de Vienne par *Hartwig Derenbourg*. Tome I. Paris 1881.
- * *Al-Mufaṣṣal*, opus de re grammatica arabicum auctore Abu 'l-Kāsim Mahmūd bin 'Omar Zamahšārī (*al-Zamahšārī* † 538 H., inc. 16 jul. 1143) ed. *J. P. Broch*. Editio altera. Christianiae 1879. — Adde: *Ibn Ja'īš* († 643 H., inc. 29 mai. 1245) Commentar zu Zamahšārī's Mufaṣṣal. Nach den Handschriften u. s. w. herausgeg. u. s. w. von Dr. *G. Jahn*. Erster Band. Leipzig, 1882. (Zweiter Band. 1 Heft. Leipzig 1883.)
- * *Alfijjah*, Carmen didacticum grammaticum auctore Ibn Mālik († 672 H., inc. 18 jul. 1273) et in *Alfijjah* commentarius quem conscripsit Ibn Akil (Ibn 'Akīl † 769 H., inc. 28 aug. 1367) ed. *Fr. Dieterici*. Lipsiae 1851. — Ibn 'Akīl's Commentar zur Alfijja des Ibn Mālik aus dem Arabischen zum ersten male übersetzt von *Fr. Dieterici*. Berlin 1852.
- al-Ajurrūmijja*, grammatica arabica auctore *Ibn Ajurrūm* al-Sinhājī († 732 H., inc. 10 jun. 1323). Sexcenties impr. (Erpeni cura Leidac. 1617) praesertim in Oriente cum commentariis.

Kāfija fi-lnahū. syntaxis auctore *Ibn al-Hājib* († 626 H., inc. 26 apr. 1248). Sexcenties impr. in Oriente

§ ab Occidentalibus conscripta.

† Dr. C. P. Caspari's Arabische Grammatik. Vierte Auflage bearbeitet von August Muller. Halle 1876 — Grammaire arabe de C. P. Caspari traduite de la quatrième édition allemande et en partie remaniée par E. Uricoechea. Bruxelles 1880. — A Grammar of the Arabic Language translated from the German of Caspari and edited, with numerous additions and corrections by W. Wright. 2 ed. 2 vol. London 1874. 5.

Geo. Henrici Aug. Ewald. Grammatica critica linguae arabicae cum brevi metrorum doctrina. Lipsiae 1831—1833. II vol.

Grammaire arabe à l'usage des élèves de l'école spéciale des langues orientales vivantes; avec figures. Par M. le B^{on} Silvestre de Sacy. Seconde édition, corrigée et augmentée, à laquelle on a joint un traité de la prosodie et de la métrique des Arabes. 2 tom. Paris 1831. — Ad hoc opus complendum et ex parte emendandum pertinent *Fleischeri*

† „Beiträge zur arabischen Sprachkunde“ Berichte über die Verhandlungen der kgl. sächsischen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften zu Leipzig. Philologisch-historische Classe. 1863 (p. 93 ss.); 1864 (p. 265 ss.); 1866 (p. 286 ss.); 1870 (p. 227 ss.), 1874 (p. 71 ss.); 1876 (p. 44 ss.); 1878 (p. 65 ss.), 1880 (p. 89 ss.), 1881 (p. 117 ss.), 1883 (p. 72 ss.); conf. 1856 (p. 1 ss.); 1862 (p. 10 ss.)

J G. L. Kosegarten. Grammatica linguae arabicae p. 1—688, sine titulo et anno, incomp. (liber rarissimus.)

Mortimer Sloper Howell. A Grammar of the Classical Arabic Language translated and compiled from the Works of the most Approved or Naturalized Authorities Published under the authority of the Government N.-W.-Provinces. In an introduction and Four Parts. 3 tom. Allahabad 1880. 1883.

Darstellung der arabischen Verskunst mit sechs Anhängen u. s. w. nach handschriftlichen Quellen bearbeitet und mit Registern versehen von G. W. Freytag. Bonn 1830.

Théorie nouvelle de la métrique arabe précédée de considérations générales sur le rythme naturel du langage par M Stanislas Guyard. Paris 1875 (Extrait du Journal asiatique).

Die Rhetorik der Araber nach den wichtigsten Quellen dargestellt und mit angeführten Textauszügen nebst einem literaturgeschichtlichen Anhang versehen, von Dr. A. F. Mehren. Kopenhagen 1853

D. LEXICA.

α ab Orientalibus conscripta.

- * *Ṣaḥāḥ al-ʿarabiyye* (sive *al-Ṣaḥāḥ*) auct. *al-Jauharī* (Abū Naṣr Ismāʿīl ibn Hammād † 393 H., inc. 10 nov. 1002). 2 vol. Bulak 1282.
- * *al-Kāmūs al-muḥīt* (vel *al-Kāmūs*) auctore *al-Firūzābādī* († 816 vel 817 H. = 1413/4). 2 vol. Calcutta 1817, editio optima vocalibus notata 4 vol. Bulak 1279. — Turcice explanatus 3 vol. Stambul 1272 et al. — Commentarium cui titulus est *Tāj al-ʿarūs* scripsit *Sayyid Mur-tadā al-Zubaidī* († 1205 H., inc. 10 Sept. 1790). 5 vol. (ad finem an) Cairo, 1286/7.
- Muḥīt al-muḥīt*, auctore *Buṭrus al-Bistānī*. 2 vol. Beirut 1286. (1869/70).
- Fikh al-luga*, opus synonymicum, auctore *al-Taʿālībī* († 429 H., inc. 14 oct. 1037.) Cairo (saepius impressum).
- * *Gawālikī's al-Muʿarrab* (opus de vocibus peregrinis auctore *al-Jawālikī* † 465 H., inc. 17 Sept. 1072) Nach der Leydener Handschrift mit Erläuterungen herausgegeben von *Ed. Sachau*. Leipzig 1867.
- * *Asās al-balāga* (opus lexicogr. imprimis verborum sensum tropicum exhibens) auctore *al-Zamahṣarī* († 538 H., inc. 16 juli 1143). 2 vol. Bulak 1299.
- Liber as-Sojutu* († 911 H., inc. 4 jun. 1505) de nominibus relativis, inscriptus *Lubb al-lubāb*, arab. cum annot. crit. ed. *P. J. Veth*. 1—3. Lugduni Bat. 1840—51 4^o.
- * *Al-Moshtabih* auctore *Schams-o'ddīn Abu Abdallah Mohammed ibn Ahmed ad-Dhahabī* (al-Dahabī † 748 H., inc. 13 apr. 1347). E codd. mss. editus a *P. de Jong*. Lugduni Batav. 1881. (De nominibus propriis homonymis).

β ab Occidentalibus conscripta.

- † *G. W. Freytag*, *Lexicon Arabico-Latinum* praesertim ex *Djeuhari Firuzabadique* et aliorum libris confectum. Accedit index vocum latinarum locupletissimus. IV Tomi. Hal. 1830—1837. 4^o maj.
- G. W. Freytag*, *Lexicum Arabico-Latinum* ex opere suo majore in usum trorum excerptum edidit. Halis 1836. 4^o maj.
- * *Maddu-l-Kāmūs*, an arabic-english *Lexicon* derived from the best and the most copious eastern sources comprising a very large collection of words and significations omitted in the *Kamoos*, with

supplements to its abridged and defective explanations ample grammatical and critical comments and examples in prose and verse: composed by means of the munificence of the most noble Algernon, Duke of Northumberland etc. etc. and the bounty of the British Government. by *Edward William Lane*. In two books: the first containing all the classical words and significations commonly known to the learned among the Arabs, the second, those that are of rare occurrence and not commonly known. Book I, Part 1—5. London 1863—1874; ed. by Stanley Lane Poole Part 6—7, fasc 1. 2 3 *ibid.* — 1884 (J).

*Supplément aux dictionnaires arabes par *R. Dozy*. 2 tom. Leyde 1881. — Conf. *Fleischer*, Studien über Dozy's Supplément: Berichte über die Verhandlungen der kgl. sachs. Ges. d. Wiss. zu Leipzig. Philol.-histor. Classe 1881 (p 1 ss.), 1882. 1884.

A. *Kaziminski* de Biberstein Dictionnaire arabe-français I. II. Paris. 1860.

Vocabulaire arabe-français (Cuche). Beyrouth 1883.

†A. *Wahrmond*, Handwörterbuch der deutschen und neu-arabischen Sprache. I. Neuarabisch-deutscher Theil I, 1. 2. II, 1. 2. — II Deutsch-neuarabischer Theil. Giessen 1870—77.

Dictionnaire détaillé des noms des vêtements chez les Arabes. Par *R. Dozy*. Amsterdam 1845.

*Glossaire des mots espagnols et portugais dérivés de l'Arabe par *R. Dozy* et *W. H. Engelmann*. 2. éd. Leyde 1869.

E. KORANICA, ISLAMICA, VITAE MUHAMMEDI.

a ab Orientalibus conscripta.

Al-Coranus seu Lex islamitica Muhammedis filii Abdallae Pseudophrophetae edita ex museo *Abrahami Hinckelmanni*. Hamburgi 1694.

Alcorani textus universus summa fide atque pulcherrimis characteribus descriptus, in latinum translatus, oppositis notis, auctore *Ludovico Marraccio*. Patavii 1698 fol.

Corani textus arabicus ad fidem librorum manuscriptorum et impressorum et ad praecipuorum interpretum lectiones et auctoritatem recensuit indicesque triginta sectionum et suratarum addidit *Gus-*

- tinus Flugel*. Editio stereotypa C. Tauchnitzii. Tertium emendata; nova impressio † Lipsiae 1869 (I. 1834; recensiois Flugelhanae textum recognitum iterum exprimi curavit *Gustarus Mauritius Redsløb*, Lipsiae 1837). — Conf. † Concordantiae Corani arabicae. Ad literarum ordinem et verbarum radices diligenter disposuit *Gustarus Flugel*. Editio stereotypa. Lipsiae 1842.
- al-Itkân fî ulûm al-kur'ân*, opus de rebus coranicis auctore *al-Suyûtî* († 911 H., inc. 4 jun. 1505); 2 part. Cairo 1278. — Sayûty's Itqân on the exegetic sciences of the Qor'an. Edited by Mowlawies Basheeroodeen and Noorool-Haqq with an analysis by A. Sprenger. Calcutta 1852—54.
- al-Kaššâf*. Commentarius in Koranum auctore *al-Zamakhshari* († 538 H., inc. 16 jul. 1143). 2 vol. Bulak 1281. — The Qoran with the commentary of Zamakhshari entitled the Kashshaf an haqaïq al-tanzil, ed. by *W. Nassau Lees and Khadîm Hosain and 'Abd al Hayy*. Calcutta 1856.
- Beidhawî* († 685 H., inc. 27 febr. 1286; vel 692) commentarius in Coranum ex codd. Parisiensibus Dresdensibus et Lipsiensibus edidit indicibusque instruxit *H. O. Fleischer*. 2 vol. Lipsiae 1846—48. — Indices ad Beidhawî commentarium in Coranum confecit *Winand Fell*. Leipzig 1878.
- Le Recueil des traditions musulmanes par Abou Abdallah ibn Ismail al-Bokhari* (al-Buhârî † 257 H., inc. 29 nov. 870.) publié par *L. Krehl*. I—III Léyde 1862—68. — Saepius impressum sine vel cum adjectis commentarius.
- Sahîh Muslim*. Collectio traditionum prophetae auctore *Muslim* († 261 H., inc. 16 oct. 874). Cum commentario *al-Nawawi* († 676 H., inc. 4 jun. 1277) 5 vol. Cairo 1283.
- Ihyâ al-'ulûm*, opus theologicum auctore *al-Gazâlî* († 505 H., inc. 10 jul. 1111). Bulak 1289. — (Conf. Richard Gosche, *Über Ghazzâlîs Leben und Werke: Abhdl. d. kgl. Akad. d. Wiss. zu Berlin* 1858.)
- *Das Leben Muhammeds nach Muhammed *ibn Ishâk* († 151 H., inc. 26 jan. 768) bearbeitet von *Abd el-Malik ibn Hîscham* († 218 H., inc. 27 jan. 833); hrsg. von *F. Wûstenfeld*. 2 vol. Gottingen 1858—60. (Versio germ.. Das Leben Muhammeds u. s. w. bearbeitet von *G. Weil*. Stuttgart 1864.)
- Muhammed in Medina*. Das ist *Vakîdî's* (*al-Wâkîdî* † 207 H., inc. 27 mai 822) *Kitab al Maghazi* in verkürzter deutscher Wiedergabe herausgegeben von *J. Wellhausen*. Berlin 1882.
- Asad al-gâbe*. Vitae 7500 virorum qui cum Mohammede convenerunt auctore *Ibn al-A'tîr* († 630 H., inc. 18 oct. 1232). 5 vol. Cairo 1286.

- al-Isābe, A biographical dictionary of persons who knew Muhammed by *Ibn Hajar* (Ibn Hajar † 852 H. inc 7 mart. 1448). Edited in arabic by Mowlawies Mohammed Wajyh, Abd al-Hagq, and Gholām Qádir and A. Sprenger. Bibliotheca indica. Vol. I, Calcutta 1856, vol. IV, Calcutta 1873. Vol. II, fasc. 1—5; vol. III, fasc. 1—4, Kīṣas el-'anbiyā, (historiae fabulosae prophetarum) auctore *al-Tālabi* († 427 H, inc. 5 nov. 1035). Cairo 1297 et saepius impr.
- Ad-dourra al-fakhira, la perle précieuse de Ghazālī († 505 H., inc. 10 jul. 1111) par *L. Gautier*. Genève 1878. Eschatologia muslimica.

§ ab Occidentalibus conscripta.

- Der Koran nach Boysen von Neuem aus dem Arabischen übersetzt mit einer historischen Einleitung und Anmerkungen von *G. Wahl*. Halle 1828.
- Der Koran. Aus dem Arabischen wortgetreu neu übersetzt mit Anmerkungen von *L. Ullmann*. 6. Aufl 1862.
- Le Koran, Traduction nouvelle, faite sur le texte arabe, par *Mr. Kaziminski*, Nouv. éd. Paris 1854.
- The Koran commonly called the Alcoran of Mohammed: translated into English from the Original Arabic. With explanatory notes taken from the most approved commentators. To which is prefixed a preliminary discourse. By *George Sale*. London 1774 et saepius.
- J. M. Rodwell*, The Koran, translated from the arabic, 2 ed. London 1876.
- The Qur'an translated by *E. H. Palmer*. 2 parts. Oxford 1880 (The sacred books of the East translated by various oriental scholars and edited by *F. Max Muller* vol. VI. IX).
- † Geschichte des Qorāns von *Theodor Noldeke*. Göttingen 1860.
- Über die Religion der vorislamischen Araber. Eine zur Habilitation etc. öffentlich zu vertheidigende Abhandlung von *Ludolf Krehl*. Leipzig 1863.
- * Das Leben und die Lehre des Mohammad nach bisher grösstentheils unbenutzten Quellen bearbeitet von *A. Sprenger*. Zweite Ausgabe. Berlin 1869.
- † Das Leben Muhammed's. Nach den Quellen popular dargestellt von *Theodor Noldeke*. Hannover 1863.
- W. Muir*, The life of Mahomet and History of Islam. 4 vol. London 1858—61.
- † Das Leben und die Lehre des Muhammed. Dargestellt von *Ludolf Krehl*. 1. Theil. Das Leben des Muhammed. Leipzig 1884

**Snouck-Hurgronje*, Het mekkansche Feest. Leiden 1880.

† Was hat Mohammed aus dem Judenthum aufgenommen? von *Abraham Geiger*. Bonn 1833.

R. Dozy, Het Islamisme. Leiden 1863. 2 ed. Haarlem 1880; Essai sur l'histoire de l'Islamisme par R. Dozy trad. par V. Chauvin. Leyde-Paris 1879

Die Mu'taziliten oder die Fieidenker im Islām. Ein Beitrag zur allgemeinen Culturgeschichte von *Heinrich Steiner*. Leipzig 1865.

De strijd over het Dogma in den Islām tot op el-Ash'ari door Dr. *M. Th. Houtsma*. Leiden 1875.

Zur Geschichte Abu 'l-Hasan al-Aš'ari's († circa 324 H. = 935) von *Wilhelm Spitta*. Leipzig 1876.

J. Goldziher, Die Schule der Zahinten, ihr Ursprung, ihr System und ihre Geschichte. Leipzig 1884.

F. HISTORICA.

α ab Orientalibus conscripta.

Ibn Coteiba's (ibn Kutaiba † 276 H., inc. 6 mai. 889) Handbuch der Geschichte herausgegeben von *Ferd. Wustenfeld*. Göttingen 1850.

Anonyme Arabische Chronik Band XI vermuthlich das Buch der Verwandschaft und Geschichte der Adligen von Abulhasan ahmed ben jahā ben gābir ben dāwūd elbelāḍorī elbagdādī († 279 H., inc. 3 apr. 892). Autogr. und herausgegeben von *W. Ahlwardt*. Greifswald 1883.

* *Annales* auctore Abu Djafar Mohammed Ibn Djarir *At-Tabari* (al-Tabari † 309 H., inc. 12 mai. 921), quos ediderunt J. Barth, Th. Nöldeke, O. Loth (†), E. Prym, H. Thorbecke, S. Fränkel, D. H. Muller, M. Th. Houtsma, S. Guyard (†), V. Rosen et M. J. de Goeje I, 1—5; II, 1—3; III, 1—6 Leiden 1879 seq.

Maḡoudī (al-Mas'ūdī † 346 H., inc. 4 apr. 957) Les prairies d'or. Texte et traduction par *C. Barbier de Meynard* et *Pavet de Courteille*. 9 tomes. Paris 1861—77. (id. 2 vol. Bulak 1283.)

Hamzae Ispahanensis (scrips. anno 350 H.) annalium libri X. Edidit *J. M. E. Gottwaldt*. I. textus, II. transl. Petropoli-Lipsiae 1844. 1848.

Historia saracenica, arabice olim exarata a Georgio Elmacino (*al-Makīn* † 672 H., inc. 18 jul. 1273), edita et latine reddita opere et studiis *Thomae Erpenii*. Lugduni Bat. 1625.

* Ibn el-Athuri (*ibn al-Aṭīr* † 630 H., inc. 18 oct. 1232) Chronicon quod perfectissimum (el-Kāmil) inscribitur. Edidit *Carolus Johannes*

- Törnberg.* 14 vol. Lugduni Bat. 1851—1876. (12 vol. Bulak 1290.)
- Elfachri. Geschichte der islamischen Reiche vom Anfang bis zum Ende des Chalifates. von *Ibn etthiqthaga* (scrips. anno 1302 n. a.) Arabisch herausgegeben von W. Ahlwardt. Gotha 1860.
- Abulfedae* († 732 H., inc. 4 oct. 1331) Annales musulmici arabice et latine. Opera et studus J. J. Reiskii. nunc primum ed. J. G. Ch. Adler. 5 vol. Hafniae 1789—94. — 2 vol. Stambul 1286.
- † *Abulfedae* historia Anteislamica, Arabice e duob. Codd. Paris. edidit vers. lat. notis et indicibus auxit H. O. Fleischer. Lipsiae 1831. 4^o.
- Ibn Haldūn* († 808 H. inc. 29 jun 1405) al-'ibar etc. Historia universalis. 7. vol. Bulak 1284. — Prolégomènes d'Ebn- Khaldoun. Texte arabe par Quatremère. 3 vol. Paris 1858 (Notices et extraits des mscr. XVI 1. XVII. 1. XVIII. 1.) — Prolégomènes historiques d'Ibn Khaldoun. Traduction par Mac Guchin de Slane. 3 vol. Paris 1862—68 (Notices et extr. XIX. 1. XX. 1. XXI. 1).
- The Tarikh al-Kholfāa, or history of the Caliphs. from the death of Mohammad to the year 900 of the Hijrah by the celebrated Jalāl al-Din Al-Osyootī (al-Suyūṭī † 911 H., inc. 4 jun. 1505), ed. by W. N. Lees and Mawlawi Abd al-Haqq. Calcutta 1857.
- Liber expugnationis regionum auctore Imāmo Ahmed ibn Jahja ibn Djābir al-Baladṣorī (al-Balādūrī † 279 H., inc. 3 apr. 892) ed. M. J. de Goeje. Lugduni Bat. 1866. 4^o
- * Chronologie orientalischer Völker von *Albērūnī*. Herausgegeben von *Eduard Sachau*. Gedruckt auf Kosten der D. M. Ges. Leipzig 1878. 4^o. — Chronology of ancient Nations. An English Version of the Arabic Text of the Athar ul Bākīya of Albīrūnī, or "Vestiges of the Past." Collected and reduced to writing by the Author in A. H. 390—1, A. D. 1000. Translated and Edited, with Notes and Index. by C. E. Sachau. Published for the Oriental Translation Fund of Great Britain and Ireland Roy. 8^o. London 1879.
- Book of religious and philosophical sects by Muhammad al-Shahrastānī († 528 H., inc 29 mart. 1153). Now first edited by W. Cureton. 2 vol. London 1846. — Abu-'l-Fathi Muḥammad asch-Schahrastān's Religionspartheien und Philosophenschulen. Aus dem Arabischen übersetzt mit Anmerkungen von Th. Haarbrucker. 2 Bande. Halle 1850—1.
- Die Chroniken der Stadt Mekka. Gesammelt und herausgegeben von *Ferdinand Wustenfeld*. (I Azrakī. II Fākīhī. Fāsī, Ibn Dhuheira. III. Kuṭb ed-dīn. IV. Deutsche Bearbeitung). I—IV. Leipzig 1857—61.

- Ahmedis Arabsiadae (*Ahmed ibn Arabšah* † 854 H., inc. 14 febr. 1450) vitae et rerum gestarum Timuri, qui vulgo Tamerlanes dicitur historia (Ed.) Latine vertit etc. *S. H. Manger*. 2 vol. Leovardiae 1767. 1772.
- Analectes sur l'histoire et la littérature des Arabes d'Espagne par *Al-Makkari* (al-Makkari † 1041 H., inc. 30 jul. 1631). Publiés par *R. Dozy*, *G. Dugat*, *L. Krehl*, et *W. Wright*. 2 vol. Leyde 1855—61. (Conf. *Fleischer*, Textverbesserungen in *Al-Makkari's* Geschichtswerke: Berichte der kon. sachs. Ges. der Wissenschaften; philol.-histoi. Classe (XIX) 1867 p. 151—220; (XX) 1868 p. 236—309, (XXI) 1869 p. 39—118; 147—210. — Lettre à M. *Fleischer* contenant les remarques critiques et explicatives sur le texte d'*Al-Makkari* par *R. Dozy*. Leyde 1871). — Conf. The history of the mohammedan dynasties in Spain by *Ahmed ibn Mohammed Al-Makkari*. Translated and illustrated by *Pascual de Gayangos* 2 vol. London 1840—3. 4^o.
- Historia Abbadidarum praemissis scriptorum Arabum de ea dynastia locis nunc primum editis, auctore *R. P. A. Dozy*. I—III. Lugduni Bat 1849.
- al-Ḥiṭaṭ (geographia et historia Aegypti) auctore *al-Makrizi* († 845 H., inc. 22 mai. 1441). 2 vol. Bulak 1270. — Histoire des Sultans Mamlouks de l'Egypte, écrite en arabe par *Taki-eddin-Ahmed Makrizi*, traduite en français et accompagnée de notes par *Quatremère*. 2 vol. Paris 1837—45. 4^o.
- Abūl-Mahāsīn* ibn Tagri Bardī († 874 H., inc. 11 jul. 1469) Annales (historia Egypti) I, 1. 2 ediderunt *T. G. J. Juynboll* et *B. F. Matthes* II, 1. 2. ed. *T. G. J. Juynboll*. Lugduni Bat. 1852—61.
- Husn al-muḥādara. Historia Egypti auctore *al-Suyūṭī* († 911 H., inc. 4 jun. 1505). 2 vol. Cairo.

β ab Occidentalibus conscripta.

- * Die Geschichtschreiber der Araber und ihre Werke. Von *F. Wustenf. d.* (Aus dem XXVIII und XXIX Bande der Abhandlungen der Kgl. Ges. d. W. zu Göttingen.) Göttingen 1882. 4^o.
- † Vergleichungstabellen der muhammedanischen und christlichen Zeitrechnung nach den ersten Tagen jedes muhammedanischen Monats berechnet. Herausgegeben von *Ferd. Wustenf. d.* Leipzig 1854.
- Genealogische Tabellen der Arabischen Stämme und Familien . . . Aus den Quellen zusammengestellt von *Ferdinand Wustenf. d.* Göttingen 1852. q.-fol. — Register zu den genealogischen Ta-

- bellens der Arabischen Stämme und Familien. Mit historischen und geographischen Bemerkungen von *Ferdinand Wustensfeld*. Göttingen 1853.
- * *Caussin de Perceval*, Essai sur l'histoire des Arabes avant l'islamisme. 3 vol. Paris 1847.
- * Geschichte der Chalifen. Nach handschriftlichen grösstentheils noch unbenutzten Quellen bearbeitet von *Gustav Weil*. 3 Bände. Mannheim 1846—51. — Geschichte des Abbasidenchalifats in Egypten. Von *Gustav Weil*. 2 Bände. Stuttgart 1860—2.
- † Geschichte der islamitischen Völker von Mohammed bis zur Zeit des Sultan Selim übersichtlich dargestellt von *Gustav Weil*. Stuttgart 1866.
- † Geschichte der Araber bis auf den Sturz des Chalifats von Bagdad. Von *Gustav Flügel*. 2. Aufl. Leipzig 1864.
- W. Muir*, Annals of the early Caliphate from original sources. London 1883.
- Geschichte der Mauren in Spanien bis zur Eroberung Andalusiens durch die Almoraviden (711—1110). Von *R. Dozy*. Deutsche Ausgabe mit Originalbeiträgen des Verfassers. 2 Bände. Leipzig 1874.
- Poesie und Kunst der Araber in Spanien und Sicilien. Von *Adolf Friedrich von Schack*. 2 Bände. Berlin 1865. 2. Aufl. 1877.
- Culturgegeschichte des Orients unter den Chalifen. Von *Alfred von Kremer*. 2 Bände. Wien 1875—77.
- * Geschichte der herrschenden Ideen des Islams. Der Gottesbegriff, die Prophetie und Staatsidee. Von *Alfred von Kremer*. Leipzig 1868.

G. GEOGRAPHICA.

α ab Orientalibus conscripta.

- Das geographische Wörterbuch des Abu 'Obeid 'Abdallah ben 'Abd el-'Aziz el-'Bekri († 487 H. = 1094) nach den Handschriften zu Leiden, Cambridge, London und Mailand herausgegeben von *Ferd. Wustensfeld*. 2 Bände. Göttingen, Paris 1876. 1877.
- * Jacut's (Yāqūt † 626 H. = 1229) geographisches Wörterbuch aus den Handschriften zu Berlin, St. Petersburg und Paris auf Kosten der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft herausgegeben von *Ferdinand Wustensfeld*. 6 Bände. Leipzig 1866—73

- Jacut's Moschtarik*, das ist: Lexicon geographischer Homonyme.
Herausgegeben von *Ferd. Wustenfeld*. Göttingen 1846.
- Marāsīd al-ittilā'i*, Lexicon geographicum ed. *T. G. J. Juynboll* I—VI.
Lugduni B. 1850—64. (Excerptum ex *Jākūt*)
- Al-Hamdānī's* († 334 H., inc. 13 aug. 945) *Geographie der Arabischen Halbinsel*. Nach den Handschr. herausgegeben von *David Heinrich Muller*. Leiden 1884.
- Géographie d'Aboulféda* (*Abū-l-fidā* † 732 H., inc. 4 oct. 1331). Texte arabe par *Renaud* et *Mac Guckin de Slane*. Paris 1840. — *Géographie d'Ismail Abou 'l-Fédā* en arabe publiée par *Charles Schier*. Éd. autogr. Dresde 1846. — *Géographie d'Aboulféda*, traduite de l'arabe en français par *Renaud* I. II, 1 Paris 1848; II, 2 par *Stanislas Guyard*. Paris 1883.
- Bibliotheca geographorum arabicorum*. Edidit *M. J. de Goeje*. Pars prima. *Viae regnorum. Descriptio ditionis moslemicae* auctore *Abu Ishāk al-Fārisī al-Istakhrī* (al-Istahri, cf. *Zeitschrift* d. D. Morgenl. Ges. Bd. 25, p. 42 ff.) — Pars secunda. *Viae et regna. Descriptio ditionis moslemicae* auctore *Abu 'l-Kāsim Ibn Haukal* (ibid.). — Pars tertia. *Descriptio imperii Moslemici* auctore *Al-Mokaddasi* (al-Mukaddasi scrips. anno 378 H.). — Pars quarta. *Continens indices, glossarium et addenda et emendanda ad part. I—III* auctore *M. J. de Goeje*. Lugduni Bat. 1870—1879.
- The travels of Ibn Jubair* (fine saec. VI H.) edited by *William Wright*. Leyden 1852.
- Voyages d'Ibn Batoutah* (*ibn Baṭūṭa* † 779 H., inc. 10 mai. 1377). Texte arabe, accompagnée d'une traduction par *C. Defrémery* et *B. E. Sanguinette* (Publications de la Société asiatique). 4 vol. Paris 1853—58; deux. tir. 1874—77.

3 ab Occidentalibus conscripta.

- (Karte von) Arabien zu *C. Ritters Erdkunde*, Buch III, West-Asien, Theil XII und XIII bearbeitet von *H. Kiepert*. Neue berichtigte Ausgabe, die Orthographie revidirt von *Th. Nöldeke*. Berlin 1867 (D. Reimer).
- Die alte Geographie Arabiens als Grundlage der Entwicklungsgeschichte des Semitismus von *A. Sprenger*. Bern 1875.
- Arabien im sechsten Jahrhundert. Eine ethnographische Skizze von *Otto Blau*. Mit einer Karte: *Zeitschrift der deutschen morgenl. Gesellschaft*. Leipzig 1869 (XXIII B.) p. 559—592.
- Arabien und die Araber seit hundert Jahren. Eine geographische und geschichtliche Skizze von *Albrecht Zehme*. Halle 1875.

- Beschreibung von Arabien. Aus eigenen Beobachtungen und im Lande selbst gesammelten Nachrichten abgefasst von *Carsten Niebuhr*. Kopenhagen 1772. 4^o.
- † *Travels in Arabia* (1814) comprehending an account of those territories in Hedjaz which the Mohammedans regard as sacred. By the late *John Lewis Burckhardt* London, 2 vol. 1829. — *Johann Ludwig Burckhardt's Reisen in Arabien*, enthaltend eine Beschreibung derjenigen Gebiete in Hedjaz welche die Mohammedaner für heilig achten . . . Aus dem Englischen übersetzt. Weimar 1830.
- Richard Burton*, Personal narrative of a pilgrimage to El Medinah and Meccah. 2 vol. London 1857 (et saepius; etiam in Tauchnitz edition).
- Adolph von Wrede's Reise in Hadhramaut, Beled Beny 'Issā und Beled el Hadschar*. Herausgegeben . . . von *H. Freiherr von Maltzan*. Braunschweig 1870. — *Reise nach Sudarabien und Geographische Forschungen im und über den sudwestlichen Theil Arabiens von Heinrich Freiherrn von Maltzan* Braunschweig 1873.

H. POETICA.

- Über Poesie und Poetik der Araber von *Wilhelm Ahlwardt*. Gotha 1856 4^o.
- Bemerkungen über die Ächtheit der alten Arabischen Gedichte mit besonderer Beziehung auf die sechs Dichter etc. von *W. Ahlwardt*. Greifswald 1872.
- * *The Diwans of the six ancient arabic poets Ennābīga, 'Antara. Tharafa, Zuhair, 'Alqama and Imru'ulqais*, ed. by *W. Ahlwardt*. London 1870.
- Le Diwān de Nābīga Dhobyānī* publié par *H. Derenbourg*. Journal asiatique 1868—9.
- Le diwan d'Amro'lkais* par le B^{on} de *Slane*. Paris 1837. 4^o. (conf. *Amrulkais, der Dichter und König*. Von *Fr. Ruckert*. Stuttgart und Tübingen 1843).
- H. Thorbecke*, 'Antarah, ein vorislamischer Dichter. Leipzig 1867.
- † * *Septem Mo'allakāt carmina antiquissima Arabum, textum etc. rec. F. A. Arnold*. Lipsiae 1850.
- * *Hamasa carmina cum Tebrisii scholiis integris edidit, indicibus instruxit, versione latina et commentario illustr. G. G. Freytag*. 2 vol. Bonnae 1828—47 (coll. Abu Tammām † 190, inc. 27 nov.

- 805, al-Tabrīzī comm. † 420, inc. 11 aug. 1108). Alia ed. Bulak 1296. Conf. Hamāsa oder die ältesten arabischen Volkslieder, gesammelt von Abu Temmām, übersetzt und erläutert von *Friedrich Ruckert*. 2 T. Stuttgart 1846.
- Beiträge zur Kenntniss der Poesie der alten Araber. Von *Th. Noldeke*. Hannover 1864.
- The Hudsailian poems contained in the manuscript of Leyden edited in arabic and translated with annotations by *J. G. L. Kosegarten*. Vol. I. London 1854. 4^o. — Letzter Theil der Lieder der Hudhailiten, arabisch und deutsch: Skizzen und Vorarbeiten von *J. Wellhausen*. 1. Heft. Berlin 1884.
- Divan de *Férazdak* († 110 H., inc. 16 april 728.) récits de Mohammed-ben-Habib d'après Ibn-el-Arabi publié sur le manuscrit de Sainte-Sophie de Constantinople avec une traduction française par *R. Boucher*. Paris 1870. 4^o (incompl.).
- Chalef elahmar's* Qasside Berichtgter arabischer Text etc. von *A. Ahlwardt*. Greifswald 1859.
- Diwan des Abu Nowas nach der Wiener und Berliner Handschrift mit Benutzung anderer Handschriften herausgegeben von *W. Ahlwardt*. 1. Die Weinlieder. Greifswald 1861. — Diwan Abi Nuwas. Cairo 1277. († ca 195 H. = 810).
- Mutanabbī (**al-Mutanabbī* † 354 H. = 965) carmina cum commentario Wahīdii primum edidit, indicibus instruxit, varias lectiones adnotavit *Fr. Dieterici*. Berolini 1861. 4^o.
- **Kitāb al-agānī* auctore Abū 'l-Farag' 'Alī al-Isfahānī († 352 H., inc. 30 jan. 962). 20 vol. Bulak 1285. — Ali Ispahanensis liber cantilenarum magnus, ed. *Kosegarten*. T. 1. Grippesvoldiae 1840. 4^o.

I. VARIA.

a ab Arabibus conscripta.

- *(*Biblia*) Kitāb al-mukaddas (Vetus Testamentum). London. R. Watts 1822. (Novum Testamentum ibid. 1821.) — † Beirut variae editiones. † New York 1867. —
- Borhān-ed-dīnī es-Sernūdī (v. in fine XII saec.) Enchiridion studiosi. Arabice edidit latine vertit et lexico explanavit *Carolus Caspari*. Praefatus est *H. O. Fleischer*. Lipsiae 1838. 4^o.

Definitiones viri meritissimi Sejjid Scherif Ali ben Mohammed Dschor-dscham (*al-Jurjānī* † 816 H., inc. 3 apr. 1413). Accedunt definitiones theosophi Mohy-ed-din Mohammed ben Ali vulgo Ibn Arabi dicti. Ed. et adnot. critica instruit *Gustavus Flugel*. Lipsiae 1845.

Statio quinta et sexta et appendix libri Mevakif auctore 'Adhad-ed-din *el-Igī* († 756 H., inc. 16 jan. 1355) cum commentario Gorgānī ex codd. etc. edidit *Th. Sørensen*. Lipsia 1848. (scholastische Metaphysik).

Cosmographie de Chems ed-din Abou Abdallah Mohammed *ed-Dimachqī* (al-Dimiškī † 654 H., inc. 30 jan. 1256). Texte arabe publié d'après l'édition commencée par M. Frähn, et d'après les manuscrits par M. A. F. Mehren. St Petersburg 1866. 4^o. — Manuel de la cosmographie du moyen âge, traduit de l'arabe „Nokhbet ed-dahr fi 'adjaib-il-birr wal-bah'r" de Shems ed-din Abou-'Abdallah Mohammed de Damas et accompagnée d'éclaircissements par M. A. F. Mehren. Copenhague 1874.

*Zakarija Ben Muhammed ben Mahmūd el-*Cazirini's* (al-*Kazwīnī* † 682 H., inc. 1 apr. 1283) Kosmographie. Herausg. von *Ferd. Wustenfeld*. 2 Bände. Gottingen 1848—9. — id nach der Wustenfeld'schen Textausgabe etc. übersetzt von *Hermann Ethé*. Erster Halbband. Leipzig 1868.

Hayāt al-haiwān. Opus zoologicum, auctore *al-Damīrī* († 808 H., inc. 29 jun. 1405). 2 vol. Bulak 1284.

**al-Maidānī* († 518 H., inc. 19 febr. 1124) Majma' al-amtāl. Collectio proverbiorum. 2 vol. Bulak 1283. — Arabum proverbia, vocabulis instruit, latine vertit, commentario illustravit G. W. Freytag I, II, III (a. b.). Bonnae 1838—43.

† Les colliers d'or, allocutions morales de Zamakhshari (*al-Zamahshārī* † 538 H., inc. 16 jul. 1143) texte arabe suivi d'une traduction française et d'un commentaire philologique par C. Barbier de Meynard. Paris 1876.

Ali's hundert Sprüche arabisch und persisch paraphrasirt von Reschid-eddin Watwat, nebst einem doppelten Anhang arabischer Sprüche herausgegeben, übersetzt und mit Anmerkungen begleitet von M. H. L. Fleischer Leipzig 1837. 4^o.

*Les séances de *Harri* (al-*Harīrī* † 516 H., inc. 12 mar. 1122), avec un commentaire choisi par *Silvestre de Sacy*; 1 éd. Paris 1822; 2 éd. par *Reinaud* et *J. Derenbourg*. 2 tom. Paris 1847—1853.

*The Kāmil of *El-Mubarrad* († 285 H., inc. 28 jan. 898), edited for the German Oriental Society by W. Wright. Part 1—11. Leipzig 1864—82.

- Sîret 'Antar ibn Šaddād, 32 vol. Cairo 1286, (altera recensio 10 vol. Beirut 1871). Conf. *Antar*, a bedoueen romance. Translated from arabic by *T. Hamilton*. Part. I. i—iv. London 1820.
- Alf laïla wa-laïla. Tausend und eine Nacht arabisch. Nach einer Handschrift aus Tunis herausg. von *Maximilian Habicht* I—VIII; fortges. von *H. L. Fleischer* IX—XII vol. Breslau 1825—43. — The *Alif Laïla* or book of the thousand nights and one night, published from an egyptian Ms. by *W. H. Macnaghten*. 4 vol. Calcutta 1839—42. — 4 vol. Bulak 1279. Secundum editionem Bulacensem priorem: The thousand and one nights commonly called, in England, The arabian nights' entertainments. Translated by *W. Lane*. 3 vol. London. 1 ed. 1841. Alias editiones ed. *Edw. Stanley Poole*. (ult. 1882)

ß ab Occidentalibus conscripta.

- †*An account of the manners and customs of the modern Egyptians, written in Egypt etc. By *Edward William Lane*. Variæ editiones London. — *Lane*, Sitten und Gebräuche der heutigen Egypter. Übersetzt von *J. Zenker*. 3 Bd. Leipzig 1852.
- †**J. L. Burkhhardt*, Notes on the Bedouins and Wahābys. 2 vol. London 1831. — Bemerkungen über die Bedunen und Wahāb's. Weimar 1831.
- Einleitung in das Studium der Arabischen Sprache bis Mohammed und zum Theil später . . . von *G. W. Freytag*. Bonn 1861.

CHRESTOMATHIA.

A. FOR TRANSLATION INTO ENGLISH.

I.

قِصَّةُ بَلْقِيسَ وَهِيَ مَأْخُودَةٌ

مِنْ كِتَابِ قِصَصِ الْأَنْبِيَاءِ لِتَعْلِيٍّ * قَالَتْ¹ الْعَلَمَاءُ
بِأَخْبَارِ الْقَدَمَاءِ أَنَّ² نَبِيَّ اللَّهِ سُلَيْمَانَ بْنَ³ دَاوُدَ
عَلَيْهِمَا السَّلَامُ لَمَّا فَرَغَ مِنْ بِنَاءِ بَيْتِ⁴ الْمَقْدِسِ
عَزَمَ عَلَى الْخُرُوجِ إِلَى أَرْضِ الْحَرَمِ فَتَجَهَّزَ لِلْمَسِيرِ⁵
وَاسْتَعَكَبَ مَعَهُ مِنَ النَّاسِ وَالْجِنِّ وَالشَّيَاطِينِ وَالطُّيُورِ
وَالْوُحُوشِ مَا بَلَغَ عَشْرَةَ مِائَةِ فَرَسٍ وَأَمَرَ الرِّجَالَ الرَّخَاءَ
فَحَمَلَتْهُمْ *

فَلَمَّا وَافَوْا⁶ الْحَرَمَ أَقَامَ بِهِ⁷ مَا شَاءَ اللَّهُ أَنْ
يُقِيمَ⁸ وَقَرَّبَ الْقَرَابِينَ وَقَضَى الْمَنَاسِكَ وَبَشَّرَ أَهْلَهُ
بِخُرُوجِ نَبِيِّنَا مُحَمَّدٍ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ وَأَخْبَرَهُمْ أَنَّهُ⁹

¹ § 91 b. ² § 95. ³ § 6 f 2. ⁴ § 87. ⁵ § 34 a.
⁶ § 6 e. ⁷ § 101. ⁸ § 75.

سَيِّدَ الْأَنْبِيَاءِ وَخَاتَمَ النَّبِيِّينَ وَأَنَّ ذَلِكَ مُثَبَّتٌ فِي زُبُورِهِمْ
ثُمَّ أَحَبَّ أَنْ يَسِيرَ إِلَى أَرْضِ أَلْيَمِينَ*¹

فَخَرَجَ مِنْ مَكَّةَ صَبَاحًا² وَسَارَ نَحْوَ أَلْيَمِينَ يَوْمَ³
نَجْمٍ سُهَيْلٍ فَوَافَى صَنْعَاءَ وَقَتَ الزَّوَالِ وَذَلِكَ مَسِيرَةُ
شَهْرٍ فَرَأَى أَرْضًا بَيْضَاءَ حَسَنَةً تَزْهُو بِخَضَرَتِهَا فَأَحَبَّ⁵
النُّزُولَ بِهَا لِيُصَلِّيَ⁴ وَيَتَغَدَّى فَطَلَبُوا الْمَاءَ⁵ فَلَمْ يَجِدُوهُ*
وَكَانَ الْهُدُودُ دَلِيلَهُ عَلَى الْمَاءِ وَكَانَ⁶ يَرَى⁷ الْمَاءَ
مِنْ تَحْتِ الْأَرْضِ كَمَا يَرَاهُ الْإِنْسَانُ فِي بَاطِنِ الرُّجَاجَةِ
فَيَعْرِفُ مَوْضِعَ الْمَاءِ وَغُمَقَهُ⁸ ثُمَّ تَجَّى⁹ الشَّيَاطِينُ
فَيَسْتَخْرِجُونَ الْمَاءَ فَلَمَّا نَزَلَ سُلَيْمَانُ قَالَ الْهُدُودُ¹⁰
فِي نَفْسِهِ إِنَّ سُلَيْمَانَ قَدْ أَشْتَعَلَ بِالنُّزُولِ فَأَرْتَفَعَ إِلَى
نَحْوِ السَّمَاءِ وَنَظَرَ إِلَى طُولِ الدُّنْيَا وَعَرَضُهَا وَنَظَرَ بَيْنَنَا
وَشِمَالًا فَرَأَى بُسْتَانَ بَلْقِيسَ فَمَالَ إِلَى الْخَضِرَةِ فَوَقَعَ
فِيهَا فَإِذَا هُوَ بِهِدُودِ أَلْيَمِينَ فَهَبَطَ عَلَيْهِ فَكَانَ اسْمُ
هُدُودِ سُلَيْمَانَ يَعْفُورًا وَاسْمُ هُدُودِ أَلْيَمِينَ عَفِيرًا¹⁵

¹ § 88 a.² § 82 a.³ § 100 b.⁴ § 75.⁵ § 84 b.⁶ § 74 c.⁷ § 41 b.⁸ § 89.

فَقَالَ عُقَيْرٌ لِيَعْفُورٌ مِنْ أَيْنَ أَقْبَلْتَ وَإِلَى أَيْنَ تُرِيدُ
 قَالَ أَقْبَلْتُ مِنَ الشَّامِ مَعَ صَاحِبِي سُلَيْمَانَ بْنِ دَاوُدَ
 عَلَيْهِ السَّلَامُ فَقَالَ لَهُ الْهُدُودُ وَمَنْ سُلَيْمَانُ بْنُ
 دَاوُدَ قَالَ مَلِكُ الْجِنِّ وَالْإِنْسِ وَالشَّيَاطِينِ وَالْوُحُوشِ
 5 وَالرِّيَاحِ فَمِنْ أَيْنَ¹ أَنْتَ قَالَ أَنَا مِنْ هَذِهِ الْبِلَادِ قَالَ
 وَمَنْ مَلِكُهَا قَالَ أَمْرَأَةٌ قَالَ فَمَا اسْمُهَا قَالَ يُقَالُ لَهَا
 بَلْقِيسُ وَإِنْ كَانَ لِصَاحِبِكَ مُلْكٌ عَظِيمٌ فَلَبَسَ مُلْكُ
 بَلْقِيسَ دُونَهُ فَإِنَّهَا مَلِكَةُ الْيَمَنِ كُلِّهِ² وَتَحْتَ يَدِهَا
 اثْنَا عَشَرَ أَلْفَ قَيْدٍ³ مَعَ كُلِّ قَيْدٍ مِائَةُ أَلْفِ مُقَاتِلٍ
 10 فَهَلْ أَنْتَ مُنْطَلِقٌ مَعِيَ حَتَّى تَنْظُرَ إِلَى مُلْكِهَا قَالَ
 أَخَافُ أَنْ يَتَفَقَّدَنِي سُلَيْمَانُ فِي وَغَتِ الصَّلَاةِ إِذَا
 أَحْتَاجَ⁴ إِلَى الْمَاءِ فَقَالَ لَهُ الْهُدُودُ الْيَمَانِيُّ إِنَّ
 صَاحِبَكَ لَيْسَ بِهِ أَنْ تَأْتِيَهُ بِخَبَرِ هَذِهِ الْمَلِكَةِ فَانْطَلِقْ
 مَعَهُ حَتَّى أَتَى بَلْقِيسَ وَنَظَرَ مُلْكُهَا وَمَا رَجَعَ إِلَى
 15 سُلَيْمَانَ إِلَّا وَقَتَ صَلَاةِ الْعَصْرِ قَالَ فَلَمَّا نَزَلَ سُلَيْمَانُ
 وَدَخَلَ عَلَيْهِ وَقَتَ صَلَاةِ الْعَصْرِ طَلَبَ الْهُدُودَ وَذَلِكَ

1 § 94 b. 2 § 85 b. 3 § 67 a. 4 § 101. 5 § 95 a not.

أَنَّهُ نَزَلَ عَلَى غَيْرِ مَاءٍ فَسَأَلَ الْإِنْسَ عَنِ الْمَاءِ فَقَالُوا
لَا تَعْلَمُ هَهُنَا مَاءٌ فَسَأَلَ الْجِنَّ وَالشَّيَاطِينَ فَقَالُوا لَا
نَعْلَمُ فَتَفَقَّدَ عِنْدَ ذَلِكَ الْهَدُودَ فَلَمْ يَجِدْهُ فَتَوَعَّدَهُ*
وَفِي رِوَايَةٍ كَانَ سَبَبُ تَفَقُّدِ الْهَدُودِ وَسُؤَالِهِ عَنْهُ
إِخْلَالَهُ بِالنُّوبَةِ وَذَلِكَ أَنَّ سُلَيْمَانَ كَانَ إِذَا نَزَلَ مَنْزِلًا⁵
يُظِلُّهُ وَجُنْدَهُ الطَّيْرُ مِنَ الشَّمْسِ فَرَأَى مَوْضِعَ الْهَدُودِ
خَالِيًا فَدَعَا عَرِيفَ الطَّيْرِ وَهُوَ النَّسْرُ فَسَأَلَهُ عَنِ
الْهَدُودِ فَقَالَ أَصْلَحَ¹ اللَّهُ أَمْلِكَ مَا أَدْرِي أَئِنَّ هُوَ
وَمَا أَرْسَلْتُهُ إِلَى مَوْضِعٍ فَغَضِبَ عِنْدَ ذَلِكَ سُلَيْمَانُ
وَقَالَ *لَأُعَذِّبَنَّكَ عَذَابًا شَدِيدًا² أَوْ لَأَذْبَحَنَّكَ³ أَوْ لِيَأْتِيَنِي¹⁰
بِسُلْطَانٍ مُبِينٍ⁴ أَيِ حُجَّةٍ وَاصِحَةٍ*

ثُمَّ دَعَا الْعُقَابَ سَيِّدَ الطُّيُورِ فَقَالَ لَهُ عَلَى
بِالْهَدُودِ السَّاعَةَ⁵ فَرَفَعَ الْعُقَابُ نَفْسَهُ دُونَ السَّمَاءِ
حَتَّى اتَّصَقَ بِالْهَوَاءِ فَنَظَرَ إِلَى الدُّنْيَا كَأَلْقِصَعَةٍ بَيْنَ
يَدَيْ أَحَدِكُمْ ثُمَّ اَلْتَفَتَ يَمِينًا وَشِمَالًا فَإِذَا هُوَ¹⁵
بِالْهَدُودِ مُقْبِلًا مِنْ لَحْوِ أَلْيَبَنٍ فَأَنْقَضَ الْعُقَابُ نَحْوَهُ

1 § 73 d. 2 § 80. 3 Sur. 27, 21. 4 § 47 a not. 5 § 84 a.

يُرِيدُهُ فَلَمَّا رَأَى الْهُدُودَ ذَلِكَ عَلِمَ أَنَّ الْعُقَابَ
يَقْصِدُهُ بِسُوءٍ فَنَاشَدَهُ اللَّهُ وَقَالَ لَهُ أَسْأَلُكَ بِحَقِّ
الَّذِي قَوَّكَ وَأَقْدَرَكَ عَلَيَّ إِلَّا رَحِمْتَنِي وَلَا تَتَعَرَّضْ¹ لِي
بِسُوءٍ قَالَ قَوْلِي الْعُقَابُ عَنْهُ وَقَالَ لَهُ وَيَلَكَ تَكَلَّتَكَ
أُمُّكَ إِنَّ نَبِيَّ اللَّهِ سُلَيْمَانَ قَدْ حَلَفَ أَنْ يُعَذِّبَكَ أَوْ
يَذْبَحَكَ ثُمَّ طَارَا مُتَوَجِّهَيْنِ² فَنَحَوَ سُلَيْمَانُ فَلَمَّا أَنْتَهَيَا
إِلَى الْمَعْسَكِ تَلَقَّاهُمَا النَّسْرُ وَالطَّيْرُ كُلُّهُ وَقَالُوا لَهُ أَيْنَ
غَبْتَ فِي يَوْمِكَ هَذَا فَلَقَدْ تَوَعَّدَكَ نَبِيُّ اللَّهِ سُلَيْمَانُ
وَأَخْبَرُوهُ بِمَا قَالَ فَقَالَ الْهُدُودُ وَمَا أَسْتَتْنِي نَبِيُّ اللَّهِ
قَالُوا بَلَى إِنَّهُ قَالَ أَوْ لِيَأْتِيَنِي بِسُلْطَانٍ مُبِينٍ قَالَ
نَجَوْتُ إِذَا*

ثُمَّ طَارَ الْعُقَابُ وَالْهُدُودُ حَتَّى أَتَيَا سُلَيْمَانَ
وَكَانَ قَاعِدًا عَلَى كُرْسِيِّهِ فَقَالَ الْعُقَابُ قَدْ أَتَيْتَكَ بِهِ
يَا نَبِيَّ³ اللَّهُ فَلَمَّا قَرَبَ الْهُدُودُ مِنْهُ طَاطَأَ رَأْسَهُ
وَأَرْخَى ذَنَبَهُ وَجَنَاحَيْهِ يُجْرُهَا عَلَى الْأَرْضِ تَوَاضَعًا⁴
لِسُلَيْمَانَ فَمَدَّ سُلَيْمَانُ يَدَهُ إِلَى رَأْسِهِ فَجَبَذَهَا وَقَالَ

¹ § 76 b. ² § 82 b. ³ § 61. ⁴ § 82 d.

أَيَّنَ كُنْتَ لِأَعَدِّبَنَّكَ عَدَابًا شَدِيدًا فَقَالَ لَهُ أَلْهَدْهُدُ
 يَا نَبِيَّ اللَّهِ أَذْكَرُ وَفُوفَكَ بَيْنَ يَدَيِ اللَّهِ عَزَّ وَجَلَّ
 فَلَمَّا سَمِعَ ذَلِكَ سُلَيْمَانُ ارْتَعَدَ وَعَقَا عَنْهُ*
 ثُمَّ سَأَلَهُ مَا أَلَذِي أَبْطَأَكَ عَنِّي فَقَالَ أَلْهَدْهُدُ
 *أَحَطْتُ بِمَا لَمْ تُحِطْ بِهِ وَجِئْتُكَ مِنْ سَبَا بِنَبَأٍ يَقِينٍ⁵
 إِنِّي وَجَدْتُ أَمْرًا تَمْلِكُهُمْ وَأُوتِيْتُ مِنْ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ وَلَهَا
 عَرْشٌ عَظِيمٌ وَجَدْتُهَا وَقَوْمَهَا يَسْجُدُونَ لِلشَّيْءِ مِنْ
 دُونِ اللَّهِ وَزَيَّنَ لَهُمُ الشَّيْطَانُ أَعْمَالَهُمْ فَصَدَقُوا عَنْ
 السَّبِيلِ فَهُمْ لَا يَهْتَدُونَ¹

أَخْبَرَ أَبْنُ مَيْمُونَةَ بِإِسْنَادِهِ عَنْ أَبِي هُرَيْرَةَ عَنْ¹⁰
 النَّبِيِّ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ أَنَّهُ قَالَ كَانَ أَحَدُ أَبْوَى
 بَلْقِيسَ جَنِيًّا قَالُوا فَلَمَّا مَاتَ أَبُو بَلْقِيسَ وَلَمْ يُخْلَفْ
 وَلَدًا غَيْرَهَا طَبِعَتْ فِي الْمُلْكِ وَطَلَبَتْ مِنْ قَوْمِهَا أَنْ
 يُبَايِعُوهَا فَاطَاعَهَا قَوْمٌ وَعَصَاهَا آخَرُونَ فَاخْتَارُوا عَلَيْهَا
 رَجُلًا فَمَلَّكُوهُ عَلَيْهِمْ وَافْتَرَقُوا فِرْقَتَيْنِ كُلُّ فِرْقَةٍ مِنْهُنَّ¹⁵
 اسْتَوْلَتْ عَلَى طَرَفٍ مِنَ أَرْضِ الْيَمَنِ ثُمَّ إِنَّ هَذَا

الرَّجُلَ الَّذِي مَلَكُوهُ أَسَاءَ السَّيْرَةِ فِي أَهْلِ مَمْلَكَتِهِ
 حَتَّى كَانَ يَمُدُّ يَدَهُ إِلَى حُرِّمِ رَعِيَّتِهِ يَفْجُرُ بِهِمْ فَأَرَادَ
 أَصْحَابُهُ حَلْعَهُ فَلَمْ يَقْدِرُوا عَلَيْهِ فَلَمَّا رَأَتْ بِلْقِيسُ
 ذَلِكَ أَدْرَكَتْهَا الْغَيْرَةُ فَأَرْسَلَتْ إِلَيْهِ وَعَرَضَتْ نَفْسَهَا
 ٥ عَلَيْهِ فَأَجَابَهَا الْمَلِكُ إِلَى ذَلِكَ وَقَالَ مَا مَنَعَنِي أَنْ
 أَبْتَدِيَنَّكَ بِالْحُطْبَةِ إِلَّا أَلْيَأْسُ^١ مِنْكَ فَقَالَتْ لَا أَرْغَبُ عِنْدَكَ
 فَإِنَّكَ كُفُوٌ كَرِيمٌ فَأَجْمَعُ رِجَالَ قَوْمِي فَأَخْطُبُنِي مِنْهُمْ
 فَجَمَعَهُمْ وَخَطَبَهَا مِنْهُمْ فَقَالُوا لَا تَرَاهَا تَفْعَلُ هَذَا
 فَقَالَ إِنَّمَا هِيَ الَّتِي أَبْتَدَأْتَنِي وَإِنِّي أُحِبُّ أَنْ تَسْمَعُوا
 ١٠ قَوْلَهَا فَتَشْهَدُوا عَلَيْهَا فَلَمَّا جَاوَهَا^٢ وَذَكَرُوا لَهَا ذَلِكَ
 قَالَتْ نَعَمْ إِنِّي أَحْبَبْتُ الْوَلَدَ فَرَوَّجُوهَا مِنْهُ فَلَمَّا
 رَفَّتْ إِلَيْهِ خَرَجَتْ فِي نَاسٍ كَثِيرٍ مِنْ خَدَمِهَا وَحَشَمِهَا
 حَتَّى غَصَّتْ مَنَازِلُهُ وَدَوْرُهُ بِهِمْ فَلَمَّا جَاءَتْهُ سَقَّتُهُ
 الْحَمْرَ حَتَّى سَكِرَ ثُمَّ حَرَّتْ رَأْسَهُ وَأَنْصَرَفَتْ مِنَ الْبَلَدِ
 ١٥ إِلَى مَنْزِلِهَا فَلَمَّا أَصْبَحَ النَّاسُ وَرَأَوْا الْمَلِكَ قَتِيلًا وَرَأْسَهُ
 مَنْصُوبًا عَلَى بَابِ دَارِهِ عَلِمُوا أَنَّ تِلْكَ الْمُنَاكْحَةَ كَانَتْ

مَكْرًا وَخَدِيعَةً مِنْهَا فَأَجْتَمَعُوا إِلَيْهَا وَقَالُوا لَهَا أَنْتِ
 أَحَقُّ¹ بِهَذَا الْمَلِكِ مِنْ غَيْرِكَ فَقَالَتْ لَوْ لَا الْعَارُ
 وَالشَّنَارُ مَا قَتَلْتُهُ وَلَكِنْ رَأَيْتُهُ قَدْ عَمَّ فَسَادُهُ
 فَأَخَذَتْنِي الْحَمِيَّةُ فَفَعَلْتُ بِهِ مَا فَعَلْتُ فَمَلَّكُوهَا
 وَاسْتَتَبَ أَمْرُهَا فِي الْمَمْلَكَةِ*

5

فَقَالَتْ لِيُوزَرَائِهَا مَا كَانَ يَعْبُدُ آبَائِي الْأَمْضُونَ
 قَالُوا كَانُوا يَعْبُدُونَ إِلَهَ السَّمَاءِ قَالَتْ وَأَيْنَ هُوَ قَالُوا
 هُوَ فِي السَّمَاءِ وَعَلِمُهُ فِي الْأَرْضِ قَالَتْ فَكَيْفَ أَعْبُدُهُ
 وَأَنَا² لَا أَرَاهُ وَلَسْتُ أَعْرِفُ شَيْئًا أَشَدَّ مِنْ نُورِ الشَّمْسِ
 فَهِيَ أَوْلَى مَا يَنْبَغِي لَنَا عِبَادَتُهُ فَعَبَدَتِ الشَّمْسَ مِنْ¹⁰
 دُونِ اللَّهِ تَعَالَى³ وَحَمَلَتْ قَوْمَهَا عَلَى عِبَادَتِهَا وَكَانُوا
 يَسْجُدُونَ لَهَا إِذَا طَلَعَتْ وَإِذَا غَرَبَتْ*

فَلَمَّا أَخْبَرَ الْهَذْهَدُ سُلَيْمَانَ بِخَبْرِ بَلْقِيسَ قَالَ
 لَهُ سُلَيْمَانُ *سَنَنْظُرُ أَصَدَقْتَ أَمْ كُنْتَ مِنَ الْكَاذِبِينَ⁴
 ثُمَّ إِنَّ الْهَذْهَدَ دَلَّهُمْ عَلَى الْمَاءِ فَاحْتَفَرُوا الْوَرَكَايَا¹⁵
 وَهِيَ الْأَبَارُ الَّتِي لَمْ تَطْوِ بِطُنٍ كُلِّ وادٍ فَرَوَى النَّاسُ

وَالَّذَابُ وَكَانُوا قَدْ عَطَشُوا ثُمَّ كَتَبَ سُلَيْمَانُ كِتَابًا
 مِنْ عَبْدِ اللَّهِ سُلَيْمَانَ بْنِ دَاوُدَ إِلَى بَلْقَيْسَ مَلِكَةِ
 سَبَأَ * يَسْمُ¹ اللَّهُ الرَّحْمَنُ الرَّحِيمُ² السَّلَامُ عَلَى مَنْ
 اتَّبَعَ الْهُدَى أَمَّا بَعْدُ * فَلَا تَعْلُوا عَلَيَّ وَأُتَوْنِي
 5 مُسْلِمِينَ² وَطَبَعَهُ بِالْمِسْكِ وَخَتَمَهُ بِخَاتَمِهِ وَقَالَ لِلْهُدُودِ
 * أَذْهَبْ بِكِتَابِي هَذَا فَأَلْقِهِ إِلَيْهِمْ ثُمَّ تَوَلَّ عَنْهُمْ وَكُنْ
 قَرِيبًا مِنْهُمْ فَإِنظُرْ مَاذَا يَرْجِعُونَ³ * فَأَخَذَ الْهُدُودُ
 الْكِتَابَ وَأَتَى بِهِ إِلَى بَلْقَيْسَ وَكَانَتْ بِأَرْضٍ يُقَالُ لَهَا
 مَارُبُّ مِنْ صَنْعَاءَ عَلَى ثَلَاثَةِ أَيَّامٍ فَوَافَاهَا فِي قَصْرِهَا
 10 وَقَدْ غُلِقَتِ الْأَبْوَابُ وَكَانَتْ إِذَا رَقَدَتْ غُلِقَتِ الْأَبْوَابُ
 وَأَخَذَتِ الْمَفَاتِيحَ فَوَضَعَتْهَا تَحْتَ رَأْسِهَا فَأَتَاهَا
 الْهُدُودُ وَهِيَ نَائِمَةٌ مُسْتَلْقِيَةٌ عَلَى ظَهْرِهَا فَأَلْقَى
 الْكِتَابَ عَلَى نَحْرِهَا وَقَالَ وَهَبْ⁴ بِنُ مِنْبِئِكَ كَانَتْ لَهَا
 كُوَّةٌ مُسْتَقْبِلَةٌ لِلشَّمْسِ تَقَعُ الشَّمْسُ فِيهَا حِينَ تَطْلُعُ
 15 فَإِذَا نَظَرَتْ إِلَيْهَا سَجَدَتْ لَهَا فَجَاءَ الْهُدُودُ إِلَى
 تِلْكَ الْكُوَّةِ فَسَدَّهَا بِجَنَاحَيْهِ فَأَرْتَفَعَتِ الشَّمْسُ وَلَمْ

¹ § 6 f 3. ² Sur. 27, 30—31. ³ Sur 27, 28. ⁴ § 60.

نَعْلَمُ¹ فَاسْتَبْطَأَتِ الشَّمْسُ فَقَامَتْ تَنْظُرُهَا² فَرَمَى
 الْعَجِيفَةَ فِي وَجْهِهَا قَالُوا فَأَخَذَتْ بِلَقِيْسُ الْكِتَابِ
 وَكَانَتْ قَارِئَةً كَاتِبَةً³ فَلَمَّا رَأَتْ الْخَاتَمَ ارْتَدَعَتْ وَخَضَعَتْ
 لِأَنَّ مُلْكَ سُلَيْمَانَ كَانَ فِي خَاتَمِهِ وَعَرَفَتْ أَنَّ الَّذِي
 أَرْسَلَ هَذَا الْكِتَابَ هُوَ أَعْظَمُ مُلْكًا⁴ مِنْهَا وَقَالَتْ إِنَّ⁵
 مَلِكًا تَكُونُ رُسُلُهُ الطَّيْرَ لِمَلِكٍ عَظِيمٍ فَقَرَأَتْ الْكِتَابَ
 وَتَأَخَّرَ الْهَدُودُ غَيْرَ بَعِيدٍ ثُمَّ إِنَّهَا جَاءَتْ حَتَّى
 قَعَدَتْ عَلَى سَرِيرِ مُلْكِيهَا وَجَمَعَتِ الْهَلَاءَ مِنْ قَوْمِهَا
 وَكَانَتْ تُكَلِّمُهُمْ مِنْ وَرَاءِ الْحِجَابِ وَإِذَا أَحْزَنَهَا أَمْرٌ
 أَصْفَرَتْ عَنْ وَجْهِهَا فَلَمَّا جَاؤا وَأَخَذُوا هَجَالِسَهُمْ¹⁰
 قَالَتْ لَهُمْ بِلَقِيْسُ إِنِّي أُلْقِي إِلَى كِتَابٍ كَرِيمٍ ثُمَّ قَالَتْ
 يَا أَيُّهَا الْهَلَاءُ افْتُونِي فِي أَمْرِي وَأَشِيرُوا عَلَيَّ فِيمَا
 عَرَضَ لِي مَا كُنْتُ قَاطِعَةً أَمْرًا حَتَّى تَشْهَدُونَ فَقَالُوا
 مُجِيبِينَ لَهَا نَحْنُ أُولُو قُوَّةٍ وَأُولُو بَأْسٍ شَدِيدٍ عِنْدَ
 الْحَرْبِ وَالْأَمْرِ إِلَيْكَ فَانْظُرِي مَاذَا تَأْمُرِينَ تَحْدِيدِنَا¹⁵
 لِأَمْرِكَ طَائِعِينَ*⁵

قَالَتْ * إِنِّي مُرْسِلَةٌ إِلَيْهِمْ بِهَدِيَّةٍ فَنَاظِرَةٌ بِمَ يَرْجِعُ
 الْمُرْسَلُونَ¹ يَقْبُولُهَا أَوْ رَدَّهَا فَإِنْ يَكُ² مَلِكًا قَبِلَهَا
 وَأَنْصَرَفَ عَنْهَا وَإِنْ يَكُ نَبِيًّا رَدَّهَا وَلَمْ يَرْضَ مِنَّا إِلَّا
 أَنْ نَتَّبِعَهُ عَلَى دِينِهِ قَالُوا ثُمَّ عَمَدَتْ بِلَقِيْسٍ إِلَى خَمْسِ
 مِائَةِ جَارِيَةٍ وَخَمْسِ مِائَةِ غُلَامٍ فَأَلْبَسَتْ الْجَوَارِيَ لِبَاسَ⁵
 الْعِلْمَانِ الْأَقْبِيَّةَ وَالْمَنَاطِقَ وَالْبَسَتْ الْعِلْمَانِ لِبَاسَ
 الْجَوَارِيَ وَجَعَلَتْ فِي سَوَاعِدِهِمْ أَسَاوِرَ مِنْ ذَهَبٍ وَفِي
 أَعْنَاقِهِمْ أَطْرَاقًا مِنْ ذَهَبٍ وَفِي آذَانِهِمْ أَفْرَاطًا وَشُنُوفًا
 مُرْصَعَاتٍ بِأَنْوَاعِ الْجَوَاهِرِ وَحَمَلَتْ الْجَوَارِيَ عَلَى خَمْسِ
 مِائَةِ فَرَسٍ وَالْعِلْمَانِ عَلَى خَمْسِ مِائَةِ بَرْدُونٍ عَلَى كُلِّ¹⁰
 فَرَسٍ سَرَجٌ مِنْ ذَهَبٍ مُرْصَعٌ بِالْجَوَاهِرِ غَوَاشِيهَا مِنْ
 الدِّيبَاجِ الْمَلَوَّنِ وَبَعَثَتْ إِلَيْهِ أَيْضًا خَمْسَ مِائَةِ لَبْنَةٍ
 مِنْ ذَهَبٍ وَخَمْسَ مِائَةِ لَبْنَةٍ مِنْ فِضَّةٍ وَقَاجًا مُكَلَّلًا
 بِالذَّرِّ وَالْيَاقُوتِ الْمُتَرَفِّعِ وَأَرْسَلَتْ إِلَيْهِ أَيْضًا بِالْمِسْكِ
 وَالْعَنْبَرِ وَالْأَلَنْجُوجِ وَعَمَدَتْ إِلَى حُقَّةٍ فَجَعَلَتْ¹⁵
 فِيهَا ذُرَّةً نَبِيئَةً غَيْرَ مَثْقُوبَةٍ وَخَرَزَةً مَثْقُوبَةً مُعْجَظَةً

1 Sur 27, 35. 2 § 39 a not.; 103 c.

أَلْتَقَّبَ وَدَعَتْ رَجُلًا مِنْ أَشْرَافِ قَوْمِهَا يُقَالُ لَهُ
 الْمُنْدَرُ¹ بَنُ عَمْرٍو وَصَمَتْ إِلَيْهِ رَجُلًا مِنْ قَوْمِهَا
 أَصْحَابَ رَأْيٍ وَعَقْلٍ وَكَتَبَتْ مَعَهُمْ كِتَابًا بِنُسخةِ الْهَدَايَا
 وَقَالَتْ فِيهِ إِنْ كُنْتَ نَبِيًّا فَمَيِّزْ² بَيْنَ الْوَصَائِفِ
 وَالْوَصَفَاءِ وَأَخْبِرْنَا بِمَا فِي الْحَقِّ قَبْلَ أَنْ تَفْتَحَهَا³
 وَأَثْقُبِ الدَّرَّةَ ثَقْبًا مُسْتَوِيًّا وَأَسْلُكْ فِي الْخُرْزَةِ خَيْطًا
 مِنْ غَيْرِ عِلَاجٍ إِنْئِيسَ وَلَا حِينَ ثُمَّ أَمَرَتْ بِلُقَيْسَ
 الْغُلَبَانَ فَقَالَتْ لَهُمْ إِذَا كَلَّمَكُمْ سُلَيْمَانُ فَكَلِّمُوهُ
 بِكَلَامٍ فِيهِ تَأْنِيثٌ وَخَنِيثٌ يُشْبِهُ كَلَامَ النِّسَاءِ وَأَمَرَتْ
 الْجَوَارِيَ أَنْ يُكَلِّمْنَهُ بِكَلَامٍ فِيهِ غِلْظَةٌ يُشْبِهُ كَلَامَ¹⁰
 الرِّجَالِ ثُمَّ إِنَّهَا قَالَتْ لِلرَّسُولِ أَنْظِرْ إِلَى الرَّجُلِ إِذَا
 دَخَلَتْ عَلَيْهِ فَإِنْ نَظَرَ إِلَيْكَ نَظَرَ غَضَبٍ فَأَعْلَمْ أَنَّهُ
 مَلِكٌ فَلَا يُهَوِّلَكَ مَنَظَرُهُ فَإِنَّا أَعَزُّ مِنْهُ وَإِنْ رَأَيْتَهُ رَجُلًا
 بَشَاشًا لَطِيفًا فَأَعْلَمْ أَنَّهُ نَبِيٌّ مُرْسَلٌ فَتَفَقَّهُمْ كَلَامَهُ
 وَرَدَّ الْجَوَابَ فَأَنْطَلَقَ الرَّسُولُ بِالْهَدَايَا*
 فَلَمَّا رَأَى الْهَدَاهُ ذَلِكَ أَقْبَلَ مُسْرِعًا إِلَى سُلَيْمَانَ

وَأَخْبَرَهُ بِالْخَبْرِ كُلِّهِ فَأَمَرَ سُلَيْمَانُ الْجِنَّ أَنْ يَصْنَعُوا
 لَهُ لَبِنًا مِنَ الذَّهَبِ وَالْفِضَّةِ فَفَعَلُوا ذَلِكَ ثُمَّ أَمَرَهُمْ
 أَنْ يَبْسُطُوا لَهُ مِنْ مَوْضِعِهِ الَّذِي هُوَ فِيهِ إِلَى تِسْعَةِ
 فَرَاسِخٍ مِيدَانًا وَاحِدًا بِلَبِنَاتِ الذَّهَبِ وَالْفِضَّةِ وَأَنْ
 5 يَجْعَلُوا حَوْلَ الْمِيدَانِ حِيطَانًا مُشْرِفَةً مِنَ الذَّهَبِ
 وَالْفِضَّةِ فَفَعَلُوا ذَلِكَ فَقَالَ لَهُمْ أَيُّ الدَّوَابِّ أَحْسَنُ
 مِمَّا رَأَيْتُمْ فِي الْبَرِّ وَالْبَحْرِ فَقَالُوا يَا نَبِيَّ اللَّهِ إِنَّا
 رَأَيْنَا فِي بَحْرِ كَذَا دَوَابَّ مُخْتَلِفَةً¹ لَهَا أَجْنَحَةٌ
 وَأَعْرَافٌ وَنَوَاصٍ² فَقَالَ سُلَيْمَانُ عَلَىٰ بِهَا السَّاعَةَ فَأَتَوْهُ
 10 بِهَا فَقَالَ شَدُّوْهَا عَنْ يَمِينِ الْمِيدَانِ وَعَنْ يَسَارِهِ
 عَلَى لَبِنَاتِ الذَّهَبِ وَالْفِضَّةِ وَأَلْقُوا لَهَا عُلُوفَةً فِيهَا
 ثُمَّ أَمَرَ بِأَوْلَادِ الْجِنَّ وَهُمْ خَلْقٌ كَثِيرٌ فَأَقَامُوا عَنِ
 الْيَمِينِ وَعَنِ الْبَسَارِ ثُمَّ قَعَدَ سُلَيْمَانُ فِي مَجْلِسِهِ عَلَى
 سَرِيرِهِ وَوَضَعَ³ أَرْبَعَةَ آلَافِ كُرْسِيِّ عَنْ يَمِينِهِ وَمِثْلَهَا
 15 عَنْ يَسَارِهِ وَأَمَرَ الشَّيَاطِينَ أَنْ يَصْطَفُوا صُفُوفًا فَرَاسِخَ
 وَأَمَرَ الْإِنْسَ فَاصْطَفَوْا فَرَاسِخَ وَأَمَرَ الْوُحُوشَ وَالسَّبَاعَ

¹ § 99 c not.² § 64 a.³ § 17 not.

وَالْهَوَامَّ وَالطُّبُورَ فَاصْطَفَوْا فَرَسِيحَ عَنْ يَمِينِهِ وَعَنْ
يَسَارِهِ فَلَمَّا أَقْبَلَ الْقَوْمُ وَدَعَوْا مِنَ الْمَيْدَانِ وَنَظَرُوا
إِلَى مَلِكِ سُلَيْمَانَ وَرَأَوْا الدَّوَابَّ الَّتِي لَمْ تَرَ أَعْيُنُهُمْ
مِثْلَهَا تَرُوثٌ عَلَى لَبَنِ الذَّهَبِ وَالْفِضَّةِ تَقَاصَرَتْ
إِلَيْهِمْ أَنْفُسُهُمْ وَرَمَوْا بِمَا مَعَهُمْ مِنَ الْهَدَايَا فَلَمَّا⁵
رَأَوْا إِلَى الشَّيَاطِينِ نَظَرُوا إِلَى مَنْظَرٍ عَجِيبٍ فَفَزِعُوا مِنْهُمْ
فَقِيلَ لَهُمْ جُوزُوا فَلَا خَوْفَ¹ عَلَيْكُمْ فَكَانُوا يَمْرُونَ عَلَى
كُرْدُوسٍ مِنَ الْجِنِّ وَالْإِنْسِ وَالطَّيْرِ وَالسَّبَاعِ وَالْوُحُوشِ
حَتَّى وَقَفُوا بَيْنَ يَدَيِ سُلَيْمَانَ فَنَظَرَ إِلَيْهِمْ نَظْرًا حَسَنًا
بِوَجْهِ طَلْقٍ فَقَالَ مَا وَرَاءَكُمْ فَأَخْبَرَهُ رَتِيسُ الْقَوْمِ بِمَا¹⁰
جَاءُوا بِهِ وَأَعْطُوهُ كِتَابَ الْمَلِكَةِ فَلَمَّا نَظَرَ إِلَيْهِ وَقَرَأَهُ
قَالَ لَهُمْ أَيُّنَ الْحَقَّةِ فَأَتَى بِهَا فَحَرَّكَهَا فَجَاءَ جِبْرِيلُ
عَلَيْهِ السَّلَامُ فَأَخْبَرَهُ بِمَا فِي الْحَقَّةِ فَقَالَ إِنَّ فِيهَا دُرَّةً
تَمِينَةً بِلَا ثَقَبٍ وَخَرَزَةً مَثْقُوبَةً مُعَوَّجَةً الثَّقَبِ فَقَالَ
لَهُ الرَّسُولُ صَدَقْتَ فَاتَّقُبِ الدَّرَّةَ وَأَدْخِلِ الْخَيْطَ فِي¹⁵
الْخَرَزَةِ فَقَالَ سُلَيْمَانُ مَنْ لِي يَتَّقِبُهَا فَسَأَلَ الْإِنْسَ

وَأَجِنَّ فَلَمْ يَكُنْ عِنْدَهُمْ عِلْمٌ ذَلِكَ ثُمَّ سَأَلَ الشَّبَاطِينَ
 فَقَالُوا لَهُ أَرْسِلْ إِلَى الْأَرْضَةِ فَأَرْسَدَ إِلَيْهَا فَلَمَّا أَتَتْ
 أَخَذَتْ شَعْرَةً فِي فِيهَا¹ وَدَخَلَتْ فِي الدَّرَّةِ ثُمَّ خَرَجَتْ
 مِنَ الْجَانِبِ الْآخِرِ فَقَالَ لَهَا سُلَيْمَانُ سَلِي² حَاجَتِكَ
 5 قَالَتْ أَنْ تُصَيِّرَ رِزْقِي فِي الشَّجَرِ قَالَ لَكَ ذَلِكَ ثُمَّ قَالَ
 مَنْ لِهَذِهِ الْخَرَزَةِ يَسْلُكُهَا بِالْخَيْطِ فَقَالَتْ دُودَةٌ بَبْصَاءُ
 أَنَا لَهَا يَا نَبِيَّ اللَّهِ فَأَخَذَتْ الدُّودَةُ خَيْطًا فِي فِيهَا
 وَدَخَلَتْ الثَّقَبَ فَخَرَجَتْ مِنَ الْجَانِبِ الْآخِرِ فَقَالَ لَهَا
 سُلَيْمَانُ مَا حَاجَتُكَ فَقَالَتْ أَنْ تُصَيِّرَ رِزْقِي فِي الْفَوَاكِه
 10 قَالَ لَهَا لَكَ ذَلِكَ *

ثُمَّ إِنَّهُ مَيَّرَ بَيْنَ الْجَوَارِي وَالْغُلَمَانِ بِأَنْ أَمَرَهُمْ
 أَنْ يَغْسِلُوا وُجُوهَهُمْ وَأَيْدِيَهُمْ³ فَكَانَتْ الْجَارِيَةُ تَأْخُذُ
 أَلْمَاءَ مِنَ الْآلَانِيَةِ بِإِحْدَى يَدَيْهَا ثُمَّ تَجْعَلُهُ فِي الْيَدِ
 الْآخَرَى ثُمَّ تَضْرِبُ بِهِ الْوَجْهَ وَالْغُلَامُ يَأْخُذُهُ مِنَ
 15 الْإِنَاءِ بِيَدَيْهِ وَيَضْرِبُ بِهِ وَجْهَهُ وَكَانَتْ الْجَارِيَةُ تَصُبُّ
 عَلَى بَاطِنِ سَاعِدِهَا وَالْغُلَامُ عَلَى ظَهْرِ السَّاعِدِ

¹ § 65 o.² § 36 b.³ § 65 r.

وَكَانَتْ آجَارِيَّةٌ تَصُبُّ آلَمَاءَ صَبًا وَكَانَ الْغُلَامُ يَحْدُرُ
 آلَمَاءَ عَلَى سَاعِدِهِ حَدْرًا فَمَيَّرَ بَيْنَهُمْ بِذَلِكَ ثُمَّ رَدَّ
 سُلَيْمَانَ الْهَدِيَّةَ كُلَّهَا * وَقَالَ أَتَيْدُونَنِي بِمَالٍ فَمَا
 آتَانِي اللَّهُ خَيْرٌ مِمَّا آتَاكُمْ بَلْ أَنْتُمْ بِهَدِيَّتِكُمْ تَفْرَحُونَ¹
 لِأَنَّكُمْ أَهْلُ الْبُقَاخَرَةِ وَالْمُكَائِرَةِ فِي الدُّنْيَا وَلَا تَعْرِفُونَ⁵
 غَيْرَ ذَلِكَ وَلَيْسَتْ الدُّنْيَا مِنْ حَاجَتِي لِأَنَّ اللَّهَ تَعَالَى
 قَدْ مَكَّنَنِي مِنْهَا وَأَعْطَانِي مَا لَمْ يُعْطِ أَحَدًا مِنَ الْعَالَمِينَ
 فِيهَا وَمَعَ ذَلِكَ أَكْرَمَنِي بِالنُّبُوَّةِ وَالْحِكْمَةِ ثُمَّ قَالَ
 لِلْمُنْذِرِينَ عَمْرُو أَمِيرِ الْقَوْمِ * أَرْجِعْ إِلَيْهِمْ فَلَنَأْتِيَنَّهُمْ
 بِجُنُودٍ لَا قِبَلَ لَهُمْ بِهَا وَلَنُخْرِجَنَّهُمْ مِنْهَا² أَيُّ مِنْ¹⁰
 سَبِيًّا * أَذِلَّةٌ وَهُمْ صَاغِرُونَ² إِنْ لَمْ يَأْتُونِي مُسْلِمِينَ *
 قَالُوا فَلَمَّا رَجَعَتْ رُسُلُ بَلْقَيْسَ إِلَيْهَا مِنْ عِنْدِ
 سُلَيْمَانَ وَأَخْبَرُوهَا قَالَتْ وَاللَّهِ مَا هَذَا بِمَلِكٍ³ وَمَا
 لَنَا بِهِ مِنْ طَاقَةٍ فَبَعَثَتْ إِلَى سُلَيْمَانَ إِنِّي قَادِمَةٌ عَلَيْكَ
 بِمُلُوكِ قَوْمِي حَتَّى أَنْظُرَ مَا أَمْرُكَ وَمَا تَدْعُو إِلَيْهِ مِنْ¹⁵
 دِييِكَ ثُمَّ إِنَّ بَلْقَيْسَ أَمَرَتْ بِعَرْشِهَا فَجُعِلَ فِي سَبْعَةِ

¹ Sur. 27, 36.² Sur. 27, 37.³ § 93 d.

أَبْيَاتٍ بَعْضَهَا دَاخِلٌ بَعْضٍ فِي آخِرِ قَصْرِ مِنْ سَبْعَةِ
 قُصُورٍ لَهَا ثُمَّ أَغْلَقَتْ دُونَهُ الْأَبْوَابَ وَوَكَّلَتْ بِهِ حُرَّاسًا
 يَحْفَظُونَهُ ثُمَّ إِنَّهَا قَالَتْ لِمَنْ خَلَفْتُ عَلَى سُلْطَانِهَا
 أَحْتَفِظُ بِمَا قَبْلَكَ وَسَرِيرِ مُلْكِي فَلَا تُخْلِصْ إِلَيْهِ أَحَدًا
 وَلَا يَرَاهُ حَتَّى آتِيكَ ثُمَّ إِنَّهَا أَمَرَتْ مُنَادِيًا يُنَادِي فِي 5
 أَهْلِ مَمْلَكَتِهَا لِيُؤَدِّنَهُمْ بِالرَّحِيلِ ثُمَّ شَخَّصَتْ إِلَى
 سُلَيْمَانَ فِي اثْنَيْ عَشَرَ أَلْفَ قَيْلٍ مِنْ مُلُوكِ أَلْيَمَنِ
 تَحْتَ يَدِ كُلِّ قَيْلٍ مِائَةُ أَلْفٍ مُقَاتِلٍ *

فَكَانَ سُلَيْمَانُ رَجُلًا مَهِيْبًا لَا يُبْتَدَأُ بِشَيْءٍ حَتَّى
 10 يَكُونَ هُوَ الَّذِي يَسْأَلُ عَنْهُ فَخَرَجَ يَوْمًا وَجَلَسَ عَلَى
 سَرِيرِ مُلْكِهِ فَرَأَى رَهْجًا قَرِيبًا مِنْهُ فَقَالَ مَا هَذَا قَالُوا
 بَلْقَيْسُ يَا رَسُولَ اللَّهِ قَالَ وَقَدْ نَزَلَتْ مِنَّا بِهِذَا أَلْبَكَانِ
 قَالُوا نَعَمْ فَأَقْبَلَ سُلَيْمَانُ عَلَى جُنُودِهِ * وَقَالَ يَا أَيُّهَا
 أَلْمَلُ أَيُّكُمْ يَأْتِينِي بِعَرْشِهَا قَبْلَ أَنْ يَأْتُونِي مُسْلِمِينَ¹
 15 وَاخْتَلَفَ الْعُلَمَاءُ فِي السَّبَبِ الَّذِي لِأَجْلِهِ أَمَرَ سُلَيْمَانُ
 بِإِحْضَارِ الْعَرْشِ فَقَالَ أَكْثَرُهُمْ لِأَنَّ سُلَيْمَانَ عَلِمَ أَنَّهَا

¹ Sur. 27, 38.

إِذَا أَسْلَمْتَ حَرَّمَ عَلَيْكَ مَالَهَا فَأَرَادَ أَنْ يَأْخُذَ سَرِيرَهَا
 قَبْلَ أَنْ يَحْزِمَ عَلَيْهِ أَخْذُهُ بِإِسْلَامِهَا وَقِيلَ أَرَادَ بِذَلِكَ
 أَنْ يُرِيَهَا بَعْضَ الْجَائِبِ الدَّالَّةِ عَلَى عَظِيمِ قُدْرَةِ
 اللَّهِ وَصِدْقِهِ فِي دَعْوَى النُّبُوَّةِ وَيَحْتَرِ عَقْلَهَا * قَالَ عَفْرِيتٌ
 مِنَ الْجِنِّ أَنَا أَتَيْكَ بِهِ قَبْلَ أَنْ تَقُومَ مِنْ مَقَامِكَ¹ أَيْ⁵
 مَجْلِسِكَ الَّذِي تَقْضِي فِيهِ * وَإِنِّي عَلَيْهِ¹ أَيْ عَلَى حَبْلِهِ
 * لَقَوَى¹ أَمِينَ¹ فَقَالَ سُلَيْمَانُ أُرِيدُ أَسْرَعَ مِنْ هَذَا * قَالَ
 الَّذِي عِنْدَهُ عِلْمٌ مِنَ الْكِتَابِ أَنَا آتِيكَ بِهِ قَبْلَ أَنْ
 يَرْتَدَّ إِلَيْكَ طَرْفُكَ² وَيُرَوَّى أَنَّ آصَفَ قَالَ لِسُلَيْمَانَ مَدَّ
 عَيْنَيْكَ حَتَّى يَنْتَهِيَ طَرْفُكَ فَمَدَّ سُلَيْمَانُ عَيْنَيْهِ فَنَظَرَ¹⁰
 نَحْوَ أَلْيَمَنِ فَخَرَّ آصَفُ سَاجِدًا وَدَعَا بِاسْمِ اللَّهِ الْأَعْظَمِ
 فَبَعَثَ اللَّهُ الْمَلَائِكَةَ فَحَمَلُوا السَّرِيرَ مِنْ تَحْتِ الْأَرْضِ
 يَحْدُدُونَ خَدًّا حَتَّى أَخْرَجَتِ الْأَرْضُ بِالسَّرِيرِ بَيْنَ يَدَيْ
 سُلَيْمَانَ * فَلَمَّا رَأَاهُ مُسْتَقَرًّا عِنْدَهُ قَالَ هَذَا مِنْ فَضْلِ
 رَبِّي لِيَبْلُوَنِي الشُّكْرَ أَمْ أَكْفُرُ² *
 ثُمَّ * قَالَ تَكْرُوا لَهَا عَرْشَهَا³ أَيْ زِيدُوا فِيهِ وَأَنْقُصُوا

15

¹ Sur. 27, 39.² Sur. 27, 40.³ Sur. 27, 41.

مِنْهُ وَاجْعَلُوا أَعْلَاهُ اسْقَلَهُ وَاسْقَلَهُ أَعْلَاهُ * نَنْظُرُ أَتَهْتَدِي¹
 إِلَى عَرْشِهَا فَتَعْرِفَهُ * أَمْ تَكُونُ مِنَ الَّذِينَ لَا يَهْتَدُونَ¹
 وَأَرَادَ أَنْ يَخْتَبِرَ عَقْلَهَا وَإِنَّمَا حَمَلَهُ عَلَى ذَلِكَ مَا ذَكَرَ
 بَعْضُ أَهْلِ الْعِلْمِ أَنَّ الشَّيَاطِينَ خَافَتْ أَنْ يَتَرَوَّجَهَا
 ٥ سُلَيْمَانَ وَيَسْتَوْلِدَهَا فَتُفْشَى إِلَيْهِ أَسْرَارُ الْجِنِّ فَلَا
 يَنْفَكُوا مِنْ تَسْخِيرِ سُلَيْمَانَ وَذُرِّيَّتِهِ مِنْ بَعْدِهِ فَأَرَادُوا
 أَنْ يُزْهِدُوهُ فِيهَا فَاسَاؤُا الثَّنَاءَ عَلَيْهَا وَقَالُوا لَهُ إِنَّ فِي
 عَقْلِهَا شَيْئًا وَإِنَّ رَجُلَيْهَا كَخَافِرٍ حِمَارٍ وَإِنَّهَا شَعْرَاءُ
 السَّاقِينَ لِأَنَّ أُمَّهُا كَانَتْ جَنِيَّةً فَكَانَ سُلَيْمَانُ لَبًّا
 ١٠ أَقْبَلَتْ بِلَقِيْسُ ثَرِيدُهُ أَمَرَ الشَّيَاطِينَ فَبَنَوْا لَهُ صَرْحًا
 مِنْ زُجَاجٍ كَأَنَّهُ أَلْبَاءُ بَيَاضًا وَأَجْرُوا مِنْ تَحْتِهِ أَلْبَاءُ
 وَأَلْقَى فِيهِ السَّمَكَ ثُمَّ وَضَعَ سَرِيرَهُ فِي صَدْرِهِ وَجَلَسَ
 عَلَيْهِ * فَلَمَّا جَاءَتْ بِلَقِيْسُ قِيلَ² لَهَا * اهْكُذَا عَرْشُكَ
 قَالَتْ كَأَنَّهُ هُوَ² فَشَبَّهَتْهُ بِهِ وَكَانَتْ قَدْ تَرَكْتُهُ خَلْقَهَا
 ١٥ فِي بَيْتٍ خَلْفَ سَبْعَةِ أَبْوَابٍ مُغْلَقَةٍ وَالْمَقَاتِيحُ مَعَهَا
 فَلَمْ تُقَرَّرْ بِذَلِكَ وَلَمْ تُنْكِرْ فَعَلِمَ سُلَيْمَانُ كَمَالَ عَقْلِهَا

¹ Sur. 27, 41. ² Sur. 27, 42.

ثُمَّ قَبْلَ لِبَلْقَيْسَ * آدْخُلِي الصَّرْحَ فَلَمَّا رَأَتْهُ حَسِبَتْهُ
لُجَّةً فكَشَفَتْ عَنْ سَاقَيْهَا¹ لِيَتَخَوَّضَهُ إِلَى سُلَيْمَانَ فَنَظَرَ
سُلَيْمَانُ فَإِذَا هِيَ أَحْسَنُ النَّاسِ سَاقًا وَقَدَمًا إِلَّا أَنَّهَا
كَانَتْ شَعْرَاءَ السَّافَيْنِ فَلَمَّا رَأَى سُلَيْمَانُ ذَلِكَ صَرَفَ
بَصَرَهُ عَنْهَا وَقَادَاهَا * أَنَّهُ صَرَحَ مُرَدًّا مِنْ قَوَارِيرَ¹ وَلَيْسَ⁵
بِمَاءِ *

فَلَمَّا جَلَسَتْ قَالَتْ لَهُ يَا سُلَيْمَانُ إِنِّي أُرِيدُ أَنْ
أَسْأَلَكَ عَنْ شَيْءٍ قَالَ سَلِي قَالَتْ أَسْأَلُكَ عَنْ مَا
رَوَى لَيْسَ مِنَ الْأَرْضِ وَلَا مِنَ السَّمَاءِ وَكَانَ سُلَيْمَانُ
إِذَا جَاءَ شَيْءٌ لَا يَعْلَمُهُ سَأَلَ عَنْهُ الْإِنْسَ فَإِنْ كَانَ¹⁰
عِنْدَهُمْ عِلْمٌ ذَلِكَ² وَإِلَّا سَأَلَ الْجِنَّ فَإِنْ عَلِمُوا
وَإِلَّا سَأَلَ الشَّيَاطِينَ فَسَأَلَ الشَّيَاطِينَ عَنْ ذَلِكَ
فَقَالُوا مَا أَهْوَنَ³ ذَلِكَ أَتْتُمِرِ الْخَيْلَ أَنْ تَجْرِيَ ثُمَّ أَمَلَّا
الْأَنْبِيَاءَ مِنْ عَرَفَتِهَا فَقَالَ لَهَا سُلَيْمَانُ عَرَفَ الْخَيْلَ
فَقَالَتْ صَدَقْتَ ثُمَّ إِنَّ سُلَيْمَانَ دَعَاهَا إِلَى الْإِسْلَامِ¹⁵

فَاجَابَتْ* وَقَالَتْ رَبِّ إِنِّي ظَلَمْتُ نَفْسِي¹ بِالْكَفْرِ* وَأَسْلَمْتُ
 مَعَ سُلَيْمَانَ لِلَّهِ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ¹*
 وَاخْتَلَفُوا الْعُلَمَاءُ² فِي أَمْرِهَا بَعْدَ الْإِسْلَامِ وَذَهَبَ
 أَكْثَرُهُمْ إِلَى أَنَّ اسْتَنْكَحَهَا سُلَيْمَانُ فَلَمَّا تَزَوَّجَهَا
 5 أَحَبَّهَا حُبًّا شَدِيدًا وَأَقْرَبَهَا عَلَى مُلْكِهَا وَأَمَرَ الْجَنَّ
 فَبَنَوْا لَهَا بِأَرْضِ أَلْيَمِينَ ثَلَاثَةَ حُصُونٍ لَمْ يَرَ النَّاسُ
 مِثْلَهَا أَرْتِفَاعًا وَحُسْنًا ثُمَّ إِنَّ سُلَيْمَانَ كَانَ يَزُورُهَا
 فِي كُلِّ شَهْرٍ مَرَّةً بَعْدَ أَنْ رَدَّهَا إِلَى مُلْكِهَا وَيُقِيمُ عِنْدَهَا
 ثَلَاثَةَ أَيَّامٍ وَرَوَى غَيْرُهُمْ أَنَّ سُلَيْمَانَ لَمَّا أَسْلَمَتْ
 10 بِلَقِيْسُ قَالَ لَهَا اخْتَارِي رَجُلًا مِنْ قَوْمِكَ حَتَّى
 أُزَوِّجَكَ إِيَّاهُ قَالَتْ وَمِثْلِي يَنْكِحُ الرِّجَالُ يَا نَبِيَّ اللَّهِ
 وَقَدْ كَانَ لِي فِي مُلْكِي وَقَوْمِي مِنَ السُّلْطَانِ مَا كَانَ
 قَالَ نَعَمْ إِنَّهُ لَا يَكُونُ فِي الْإِسْلَامِ إِلَّا ذَاكَ وَلَا يَنْبَغِي
 لَكَ أَنْ تُحَرِّمِي مَا أَحَدٌ آلَهُ لَكَ قَالَتْ زَوِّجْنِي إِنْ كَانَ
 15 وَلَا بُدَّ مِنْ ذَلِكَ ذَا بَتَعَ مَلِكَ هَمْدَانَ فَزَوَّجَهُ إِيَّاهَا
 ثُمَّ رَدَّهَا إِلَى أَلْيَمِينَ وَسَلَّطَ زَوْجَهَا ذَا بَتَعَ عَلَى أَلْيَمِينَ

¹ Sur. 27, 45. ² § 73 b.

وَدَعَا سُلَيْمَانَ الزَّوْبَعَةَ أَمِيرَ حِجِّ الْيَمَنِ فَقَالَ لَهُ أَعْمَلْ
 لِي ذِي بَتَعَ مَا اسْتَعْمَلَكَ فِيهِ فَصَنَعَ لِي ذِي بَتَعَ الْمَصَانِعَ
 بِالْيَمَنِ ثُمَّ لَمْ يَزَلْ بِهَا مَلِكًا يَعْمَلُ فِيهَا مَا أَرَادَ
 حَتَّى مَاتَ سُلَيْمَانُ فَلَمَّا حَالَ الْحَوْلُ وَبَلَغَ الْحِجَّ مَوْتُ
 سُلَيْمَانَ أَقْبَلَ رَجُلٌ مِنْهُمْ فَسَلَكَ تِهَامَةَ حَتَّى إِذَا كَانَ ⁵
 فِي جَوْفِ الْيَمَنِ صَرَخَ بِأَعْلَى صَوْتِهِ يَا مَعْشَرَ الْحِجِّ
 إِنَّ سُلَيْمَانَ ذِي اللَّهِ قَدْ مَاتَ فَأَرْفَعُوا أَيْدِيَكُمْ
 فَعَمَدَتِ الشَّيَاطِينُ إِلَى حَجَرَيْنِ عَظِيمَيْنِ فَكَتَبُوا فِيهِمَا
 كِتَابًا بِالْمُسْنَدِ يَعْنِي خَطَّ الْحَمِيرِيَّةِ نَحْنُ بَنِيْنَا سُلَحِينِ
 وَبَيْنُونِ وَبَنِيْنَا صِرَاحَ وَهْنِيْدَةَ وَهَذِهِ الْخُصُونُ كَانَتْ ¹⁰
 بِالْيَمَنِ عَمِلَتْهَا الشَّيَاطِينُ لِي ذِي بَتَعَ وَلَوْلَا صَارِخُ
 بَيْتِهَامَةَ لَمْ يَرْفَعُوا أَيْدِيَهُمْ فَأَنْطَلَقُوا وَتَفَرَّقُوا وَأَنْقَضَى
 مُلْكُ ذِي بَتَعَ وَمُلْكُ بِلْقِيسَ مَعَ مُلْكِ سُلَيْمَانَ
 عَمَ وَاللَّهُ أَعْلَمُ*

حَدِيثُ وَفَاةٍ بِلْقِيسَ* فَأَقَامَتْ بِلْقِيسُ سَبْعَ سِنِينَ ¹⁵
 وَسَبْعَةَ أَشْهُرٍ ثُمَّ تُوُفِّيَتْ فَدُفِنَتْ تَحْتَ حَائِطٍ بِمَدِينَةِ
 تَدْمَرٍ مِنْ أَرْضِ الشَّامِ وَلَمْ يَعْلَمْ أَحَدٌ بِمَوْضِعِ قَبْرِهَا

إِلَى أَيَّامٍ وَلِيدِ بْنِ عَبْدِ الْمَلِكِ بْنِ مَرْوَانَ قَالَ أَبُو
 مُوسَى بْنُ نَصْرِ بُعِثْتُ فِي خِلَافَتِهِ إِلَى مَدِينَةِ تَدْمُرَ
 وَمَعِيَ الْعَبَّاسُ بْنُ الْوَلِيدِ فَجَاءَ مَطَرٌ عَظِيمٌ فَأَنْهَارَ
 بَعْضُ حَائِطِ بَمَدِينَةِ تَدْمُرَ فَأَنْكَشَفَتْ الْأَرْضُ عَنْ
 ٥ تَابُوتِ طُولِهِ سِتُّونَ ذِرَاعًا مُتَّخِذٌ مِنْ حَجَرٍ أَصْفَرٍ كَأَنَّهُ
 الزَّعْفَرَانُ مَكْتُوبٌ عَلَيْهِ هَذَا مَدْفَنُ تَابُوتِ بِلَقِيَسَ
 الصَّالِحَةِ زَوْجَةِ سُلَيْمَانَ بْنِ دَاوُدَ أَسْلَمَتْ لِسَنَةِ عِشْرِينَ
 خَلَتْ مِنْ مُلْكِهِ وَتَزَوَّجَ بِهَا يَوْمَ عَاشُورَاءَ وَتُوفِّيَتْ
 يَوْمَ الْإِثْنَيْنِ مِنْ شَهْرِ رَبِيعِ سَنَةِ سَبْعٍ وَعِشْرِينَ خَلَتْ
 10 مِنْ مُلْكِهِ وَدُفِنَتْ لَيْلًا تَحْتَ حَائِطِ بَمَدِينَةِ تَدْمُرَ لَمْ
 يَطْلُعْ عَلَى دَفْنِهَا إِنْسٌ وَلَا جَانٌّ إِلَّا مَنْ دَفَنَهَا قَالَ
 فَرَفَعْنَا غِطَاءَ التَّابُوتِ وَإِذَا هِيَ غَضَّةٌ كَأَنَّهَا دُفِنَتْ فِي
 لَيْلَتِهَا فَكَتَبْنَا بِذَلِكَ إِلَى الْوَلِيدِ فَأَمَرَ بِتَرْكِهِ وَأَنْ
 يُبْنَى عَلَيْهِ بِالْعَخْرِ وَالْمَرْمَرِ*

II.

نُبْدَةُ مِنْ أَحْبَارِ الْخُلَفَاءِ مَأْخُودَةٌ

مِنْ مَرْجٍ الذَّهَبِ لِلْمَسْعُودِيِّ

كَانَ اسْمُ أَبِي بَكْرٍ عَبْدَ اللَّهِ بْنِ عُثْمَانَ وَهُوَ أَبُو
تُحَكَّافَةَ بْنِ عَامِرِ بْنِ عَمْرِو بْنِ كَعْبِ بْنِ سَعْدِ بْنِ
تَيْمِ بْنِ مُرَّةَ بْنِ كَعْبٍ وَفِي مُرَّةَ يَجْتَمِعُ مَعَ نَسَبِ رَسُولِ
اللَّهِ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ وَلَقَبَهُ عَتِيقٌ لِبِشَارَةِ رَسُولِ
اللَّهِ إِيَّاهُ أَنَّهُ عَتِيقٌ مِنَ النَّارِ فَسُمِّيَ يَوْمَئِذٍ عَتِيقًا 5
وَهُوَ الصَّحِيحُ وَقِيلَ إِنَّهَا سُمِّيَ عَتِيقًا لِعَتَقِ أُمَّهَاتِهِ
وَأَسْتُخْلِفَ وَأَبُوهُ فِي الْحَيَاةِ وَكَانَ أَزْهَدَ النَّاسِ وَأَكْثَرَهُمْ
تَوَاضَعًا فِي أَخْلَاقِهِ وَلِبَاسِهِ وَمَطْعَمِهِ وَكَانَ لِبُسُهُ فِي
خِلَافَتِهِ الشُّبْلَةَ وَالْعَبَاءَةَ وَقَدِمَ إِلَيْهِ زُعَمَاءُ الْعَرَبِ
وَأَشْرَافُهَا وَمُلُوكُ الْيَمَنِ وَعَلَيْهِمُ الْحُلْدُ وَالْحَبْرُ وَبَرُودُ 10

الْوَشْيِ الْمُثَقَّلِ بِالذَّهَبِ وَالتَّيْجَانُ فَلَمَّا شَاهَدُوا مَا
 عَلَيْهِ مِنَ اللِّبَاسِ وَالرُّهْدِ وَالتَّوَاضُّعِ وَالتَّنُسُّكِ وَمَا هُوَ
 عَلَيْهِ مِنَ الرِّقَابِ وَالْهَيْبَةِ ذَهَبُوا مَذْهَبَهُ وَنَزَعُوا مَا
 كَانَ عَلَيْهِمْ وَكَانَ مِمَّنْ وَقَدَ عَلَيْهِ مِنْ مُلُوكِ الْيَمَنِ
 5 ذُو الْكَلَّاعِ مَلِكُ حَيْبَرَ وَمَعَهُ أَلْفُ عَبْدٍ دُونَ مَنْ كَانَ
 مِنْ عَشِيرَتِهِ وَعَلَيْهِ التَّاجُ وَمَا وَصَفْنَا مِنَ الْبُرُودِ
 وَالْحُلُلِ فَلَمَّا شَاهَدَ مِنْ أَبِي بَكْرٍ مَا وَصَفْنَا أَلْقَى مَا
 كَانَ عَلَيْهِ وَتَزَيَّا بِزِيَّتِهِ حَتَّى أَتَاهُ رُيُّ يَوْمًا فِي سُوقِ
 مِنَ أَسْوَاقِ الْمَدِينَةِ عَلَى كَتِفَيْهِ جِلْدُ شَاةٍ فَفَزَعَتْ
 10 عَشِيرَتُهُ لِذَلِكَ وَقَالُوا لَهُ قَدْ فَحَكْتَنَا بَيْنَ الْمُهَاجِرِينَ
 وَالْأَنْصَارِ وَالْعَرَبِ قَالَ أَفَأَرَدْتُمْ مِنِّي أَنْ أَكُونَ مَلِكًا
 جَبَّارًا فِي الْجَاهِلِيَّةِ جَبَّارًا فِي الْإِسْلَامِ لَا وَاللَّهِ لَا تَكُونُ
 طَاعَةُ الرَّبِّ إِلَّا بِالتَّوَاضُّعِ لِلَّهِ وَالرُّهْدِ فِي هَذِهِ الدُّنْيَا
 وَتَوَاضَعَتِ الْمُلُوكُ وَمَنْ وَرَدَ عَلَيْهِ مِنَ الرُّفُودِ بَعْدَ
 15 التَّكَبُّرِ وَتَذَلَّلُوا بَعْدَ التَّجَبُّرِ*

وَبَلَغَ أَبَا بَكْرٍ عَنْ أَبِي سُفْيَانَ خَضِرِ بْنِ حَرْبٍ أَمْرَ
 فَأَحْضَرَهُ وَأَقْبَلَ يَصِيحُ عَلَيْهِ وَأَبُو سُفْيَانَ يَتَمَلَّقُهُ

وَيَتَذَلَّلُ لَهُ وَأَقْبَلَ أَبُو قُحَاظَةَ وَسَمِعَ صِيَاحَ أَبِي بَكْرٍ
فَقَالَ لِقَائِدِهِ عَلَى مَنْ يَصِيحُ آبِنِي فَقَالَ لَهُ عَلَى أَبِي
سَفِيَانَ فَدَذَا مِنْ أَبِي بَكْرٍ وَقَالَ لَهُ أَعَلَى أَبِي سَفِيَانَ
تَرْفَعُ صَوْتَكَ يَا عَتِيقُ وَقَدْ كَانَ بِالْأَمْسِ سَيِّدَ
قُرَيْشٍ فِي الْجَاهِلِيَّةِ لَقَدْ تَعَدَّيْتَ طَوْرَكَ وَجُرْتَ مِقْدَارَكَ⁵
فَتَبَسَّمَ أَبُو بَكْرٍ وَمَنْ حَضَرَهُ مِنَ الْمُهَاجِرِينَ وَالْأَنْصَارِ
وَقَالَ لَهُ يَا أَبَتِ إِنَّ اللَّهَ قَدْ رَفَعَ بِالْإِسْلَامِ قَوْمًا وَأَذَلَّ بِهِ
آخَرِينَ * وَكَانَ أَبُو بَكْرٍ رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُ قَدْ سَبَّهَ الْيَهُودَ
فِي شَيْءٍ مِنَ الطَّعَامِ وَأَكَلَ مَعَهُ الْحَارِثُ بْنُ كَلْدَةَ
فَعَبِيَ وَكَانَ السَّمُّ لِسَنَةٍ وَمَرَضَ أَبُو بَكْرٍ قَبْلَ وَفَاتِهِ¹⁰
بِخُمُسَةِ عَشَرَ يَوْمًا وَتُوفِيَ مَسَاءَ يَوْمِ الثَّلَاثَاءِ لِثَمَانِ
بَقِيْنَ مِنْ جُمَادَى الْآخِرَةِ سَنَةَ ثَلَاثِ عَشْرَةَ مِنَ الْهِجْرَةِ
وَهُوَ ابْنُ ثَلَاثِ وَسِتِّينَ سَنَةً *

ثُمَّ بُويعَ عُمَرُ وَهُوَ عُمَرُ بْنُ الْخَطَّابِ بْنِ ذَفِيلِ بْنِ
عَبْدِ الْعَزَى وَأُمُّهُ حَيْثَمَةُ بِنْتُ هِشَامٍ وَكَانَتْ سَوْدَاءَ¹⁵
وَإِذَا سُمِّيَ عُمَرُ الْفَارُوقَ لِأَنَّهُ فَرَّقَ بَيْنَ الْحَقِّ وَالْبَاطِلِ
وَكُنْيَتُهُ أَبُو حَفْصٍ وَهُوَ أَوَّلُ مَنْ سُمِّيَ بِأَمِيرِ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ

وكان مُتَوَاضِعاً حَاشِنَ الْمَلْبَسِ شَدِيداً فِي ذَاتِ اللَّهِ
 وَاتَّبَعَهُ عُمَّالُهُ فِي سَائِرِ أَفْعَالِهِ وَشِيئِهِ وَأَخْلَاقِهِ كُلِّ
 يَتَشَبَّهُ بِهِ مِمَّنْ غَابَ أَوْ حَضَرَ وَكَانَ يَلْبَسُ الْجُبَّةَ
 الصُّوفَ الْمُرَقَّعَةَ بِالْأَدِيمِ وَغَيْرِهِ وَيَشْتَمِلُ بِالْعِبَاءَةِ وَيَحْمِلُ
 ٥ الْقِرْبَةَ عَلَى كَتِفِهِ مَعَ هَيْبَةٍ قَدْ رَزَقَهَا وَكَانَ أَكْثَرُ رِكَابِهِ
 الْإِبِلَ وَرَحْلُهُ مَشْدُودٌ بِاللِّيفِ وَكَذَلِكَ عُمَّالُهُ مَعَ مَا
 فَتَحَ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِمْ مِنَ الْبِلَادِ وَأَوْسَعَهُمْ مِنَ الْأَمْوَالِ *
 وَكَانَ مِنْ عُمَّالِهِ سَعِيدُ بْنُ عَامِرٍ فَشَكَاهُ أَهْلُ
 حِمَاصٍ إِلَيْهِ وَسَأَلُوهُ عَزْلَهُ فَقَالَ عَمْرُ اللَّهِ لَا تَقُلْ فِرَاسْتِي
 ١٠ فِيهِ الْيَوْمَ وَقَالَ لَهُمْ مَاذَا تَشْكُونَ مِنْهُ قَالُوا لَا يُخْرِجُ
 إِلَيْنَا حَتَّى يَرْتَفَعَ النَّهَارُ وَلَا يُجِيبُ أَحَدًا بَلِيلٍ وَلَهُ
 يَوْمٌ فِي الشَّهْرِ لَا يُخْرِجُ فِيهِ إِلَيْنَا فَقَالَ عَمْرُ عَلَىٰ بِهِ
 فَلَمَّا جَاءَ جَمَعَ بَيْنَهُمْ وَبَيَّنَّهُ فَقَالَ مَا تَنْقِمُونَ مِنْهُ
 قَالُوا لَا يُخْرِجُ إِلَيْنَا حَتَّى يَرْتَفَعَ النَّهَارُ قَالَ مَا تَقُولُ
 ١٥ يَا سَعِيدُ قَالَ يَا أَمِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ إِنَّهُ لَيْسَ لِأَهْلِ خَادِمٍ
 فَأَعِجْنَ عَجِينِي ثُمَّ أَجْلَسُ حَتَّى يَخْتَمِرَ فَأَخْبِرُ خُبْرِي
 ثُمَّ اتَّوَضَّأُ وَأَخْرَجُ إِلَيْهِمْ قَالَ وَمَاذَا تَنْقِمُونَ مِنْهُ

قالوا لا يُجِيبُ بليد قال قَدْ كُنْتُ أَكْرَهُ أَنْ أَذْكَرَ هَذَا
 إِنِّي جَعَلْتُ اللَّيْلَ كُلَّهُ لِرَبِّي وجعلتُ النَّهَارَ لَهُمْ قال
 وما ذا تنقمون منه قال يومٌ في الشَّهر لا يخرج إلينا
 فيه قال نَعَمْ ليس لي خادمٌ فَاغْسِلْ ثَوْبِي ثُمَّ أَجْفِفْهُ
 فَأُمْسِي فقال عمرُ الحمدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي لم يَقْدِرْ فِرَاسَتِي⁵
 فَيْكَ يَا أَهْلَ حِمَصٍ اسْتَوْصُوا بِوَالِيكُمْ خَيْرًا ثُمَّ بعث
 إليه عمرُ بِأَلْفٍ دِينَارٍ وقال له اسْتَعِينْ بِهَا فقالت له
 أَمْرَأَتُهُ قَدْ أَغْنَانَا اللَّهُ عَنْ خِدْمَتِكَ فقال لها أَلَا
 نَدْفَعُهَا إِلَى مَنْ يَأْتِينَا أَحْوَجَ مِمَّا كُنَّا إِلَيْهَا قالت
 بَلَى فَصَرَّهَا صُرَّارًا ثُمَّ دَفَعَهَا إِلَى مَنْ يَثِيقُ بِهِ فقال¹⁰
 أَنْطَلِقْ بِهَذِهِ الصَّرَّةِ إِلَى فُلَانٍ وَبِهَذِهِ إِلَى يَتِيمٍ فُلَانٍ
 وَهَذِهِ إِلَى مِسْكِينٍ فُلَانٍ حَتَّى بَقِيَ مِنْهَا شَيْءٌ يَسِيرٌ
 فَدَفَعَهُ إِلَى أَمْرَأَتِهِ وَقَالَ أَنْفَقِي هَذَا ثُمَّ عَادَ إِلَى خِدْمَتِهِ
 فَقَالَتْ لَهُ أَمْرَأَتُهُ أَلَا تَتَبَعْتُ بِذَلِكَ الْبَالِ فَتَشْتَرِي لَنَا
 مِنْهُ خَادِمًا فقال سَيَأْتِيكَ أَحْوَجُ مِمَّا تَكُونِينَ إِلَيْهِ *¹⁵
 وَمَنْ عُمَّالُهُ عَلَى الْمَدَائِنِ سَلَمَانَ الْفَارِسِيِّ وَكَانَ
 يَلْبَسُ الصُّوفَ وَيَرْكَبُ الْحِمَارَ بِبِرْدَعَةٍ بَغِيرِ أَكْفٍ وَيَأْكُلُ

خُبِرَ الشَّعِيرَ وَكَانَ نَاسِكًا زَاهِدًا فَلَمَّا أَحْتَضَرَ بِالْمَدَائِنِ
 قَالَ لَهُ سَعْدُ بْنُ أَبِي وَقَّاصٍ أَوْصِنِي يَا أَبَا عَبْدِ اللَّهِ
 قَالَ أَذْكُرُ اللَّهَ عِنْدَ هَيْكَلٍ إِذَا هَبَّتْ وَعِنْدَ لِسَانِكَ
 إِذَا حَكَمْتَ وَعِنْدَ يَدِكَ إِذَا أَقْسَمْتَ وَجَعَلَ سَلْمَانُ
 ٥ يَبْكِي فَقِيلَ لَهُ يَا أَبَا عَبْدِ اللَّهِ مَا يُبْكِيكَ قَالَ سَمِعْتُ
 رَسُولَ اللَّهِ يَقُولُ أَنَّ فِي الْآخِرَةِ عَقَبَةً لَا يَقْطَعُهَا إِلَّا
 الْخُفُونُ وَأَرَى هَذِهِ الْأَسَاوِدَ حَوْلِي فَنَظَرُوا فَلَمْ
 يَرَوْا فِي الْبَيْتِ إِلَّا رُكُوءَةً وَإِدَاوَةً وَمَطْهَرَةً*

وَكَانَ عَامِلَهُ عَلَى الشَّامِ أَبُو عُبَيْدَةَ بْنُ الْجَرَّاحِ
 10 وَكَانَ يَظْهَرُ لِلنَّاسِ وَعَلَيْهِ الصُّوفُ الْجَانِي فَعَذَلَ عَلَى
 ذَلِكَ وَقِيلَ لَهُ إِنَّكَ بِالشَّامِ وَأَمِيرُ الْجَيْشِ وَحَوْلَنَا
 الْأَعْدَاءُ فغَيَّرَ مِنْ زِيَّتِكَ وَأَصْلَحَ مِنْ شَارَتِكَ فَقَالَ مَا
 كُنْتُ بِالَّذِي أَتَرُكُ مَا كُنْتُ عَلَيْهِ فِي عَصْرِ رَسُولِ اللَّهِ
 صَلَّعْمُ*

15 وَكَانَ عَمْرٌ لَا يَتْرُكُ أَحَدًا مِنَ الْعَجَمِ يَدْخُلُ
 الْمَدِينَةَ فَكَتَبَ إِلَيْهِ الْمُغِيرَةُ بْنُ شُعْبَةَ إِنَّ عِنْدِي
 غُلَامًا تَجَارًا نَقَّاشًا حَدَّادًا فِيهِ مَنَافِعٌ لِأَهْلِ الْبَلَدِ فَإِنْ

رَأَيْتَ أَنَّ تَأْذَنَ لِي فِي الْإِرْسَالِ بِهِ فَعَلْتُ فَأَذِنَ لَهُ
 وَقَدْ كَانَ الْمُغِيرَةُ جَعَلَ عَلَيْهِ كُلَّ يَوْمٍ دِرْهَمَيْنِ وَكَانَ
 يُدْعَى أَبَا لَوْلُؤَةَ وَكَانَ مَجُوسِيًّا مِنْ أَهْلِ نَهَاوَنْدَ فَلَبِثَ
 مَا شَاءَ اللَّهُ ثُمَّ أَتَى عُمَرَ يَشْكُو إِلَيْهِ ثِقَلَ خَرَاجِهِ فَقَالَ
 لَهُ عُمَرُ وَمَا تُحْسِنُ مِنَ الْأَعْمَالِ قَالَ نَقَّاشُ نَجَّارٍ حَدَّادٌ 5
 فَقَالَ لَهُ عُمَرُ مَا خَرَاجُكَ بِكَثِيرٍ فِي كُنْهِ مَا تُحْسِنُ مِنَ
 الْأَعْمَالِ فَبَصَى عَنْهُ وَهُوَ يَتَذَمَّرُ ثُمَّ مَرَّ بِعَمْرِ يَوْمًا آخَرَ
 وَهُوَ قَاعِدٌ فَقَالَ لَهُ عُمَرُ أَلَمْ أُحَدِّثْ عَنْكَ أَنَّكَ تَقُولُ
 لَوْ شِئْتُ أَنْ أَصْنَعَ رَحَى تَطْحَنُ بِالرَّيْحِ لَفَعَلْتُ فَقَالَ
 أَبُو لَوْلُؤَةَ وَاللَّهِ لَا صَنَعْتُ رَحَى يَتَحَدَّثُ بِهَا النَّاسُ 10
 وَمَضَى أَبُو لَوْلُؤَةَ فَقَالَ عُمَرُ أَمَّا الْعِلْجُ فَقَدْ تَوَعَّدَنِي
 أَنْفًا فَلَمَّا أَرْمَعَ عَلَى الَّذِي أَرْمَعَ عَلَيْهِ أَخَذَ خَنْجَرًا
 فَاشْتَمَلَ عَلَيْهِ ثُمَّ قَعَدَ لِعَمَرَ فِي رَاوِيَةٍ مِنْ زَوَايَا الْمَسْجِدِ
 فِي الْغَلَسِ وَكَانَ عُمَرُ يَخْرُجُ فِي السَّحَرِ فَيُوقِظُ النَّاسَ
 لِلصَّلَاةِ فَمَرَّ بِهِ فَتَنَّارٌ إِلَيْهِ فَطَعَنَهُ ثَلَاثَ طَعَنَاتٍ 15
 إِحْدَاهُنَّ تَحْتَ سُرَّتِهِ وَهِيَ آتَتْهُ قَتَلَتْهُ وَطَعَنَ أَثْنَى
 عَشَرَ رَجُلًا مِنَ أَهْلِ الْمَسْجِدِ فَمَاتَ مِنْهُمْ سِتَّةٌ وَبَقِيَ سِتَّةٌ

وَحَرَ نَفْسَهُ بِخَنْجَرِهِ فَمَاتَ فَدَخَلَ عَلَى عَمْرِؤَ ابْنِهِ عَبْدُ
 اللَّهِ وَهُوَ يَجُودُ بِنَفْسِهِ فَقَالَ لَهُ يَا أَمِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ
 أَسْتَخْلِفُ عَلَى أُمَّةٍ مُحَمَّدٍ فَإِنَّهُ لَوْ جَاءَكَ رَأْيِي إِلَيْكَ
 أَوْ غَنَمِكَ وَتَرَكَ ابْنَهُ أَوْ غَنَمَهُ لَا رَأْيِي لَهَا لَلْمَتَةِ
 5 وَتَلَّتْ لَهُ كَيْفَ تَرَكْتَ أَمَانَتَكَ ضَائِعَةً فَكَيْفَ يَا أَمِيرَ
 الْمُؤْمِنِينَ بِأُمَّةٍ مُحَمَّدٍ فَاسْتَخْلِفَ عَلَيْهِمْ فَقَالَ إِنَّ
 أَسْتَخْلِفَ عَلَيْهِمْ فَقَدْ أَسْتَخْلَفَ عَلَيْهِمْ أَبُو بَكْرٍ وَإِنْ
 أَتْرَكْتَهُمْ فَقَدْ تَرَكْتَهُمْ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ فَيَسَّسَ مِنْهُ عَبْدُ اللَّهِ
 حِينَ سَمِعَ ذَلِكَ مِنْهُ * فَكَانَتْ وِلَايَةُ عَمْرِؤَ عَشْرَ سِنِينَ
 10 وَسِتَّةَ أَشْهُرٍ وَأَرْبَعَ لَيَالٍ وَقُتِلَ فِي صَلَاةِ الصُّبْحِ وَهُوَ
 آتِبُنْ ثَلَاثٍ وَسِتِّينَ سَنَةً وَدُفِنَ مَعَ النَّبِيِّ وَأَبَى بَكْرٍ
 عِنْدَ رَجُلِي النَّبِيِّ وَحَجَّ فِي خِلَافَتِهِ تِسْعَ حَجَجٍ *
 ثُمَّ بَوَّعَ عُثْمَانُ يَوْمَ الْجُمُعَةِ غُرَّةَ الْحَرَمِ أَوَّلَ لَيْلَةٍ بَقِيَتْ
 مِنْ ذِي الْحِجَّةِ سَنَةَ ثَلَاثٍ وَعِشْرِينَ وَهُوَ عُثْمَانُ بْنُ
 15 عَفَّانَ بْنِ أَبِي الْعَاصِ بْنِ أُمَيَّةَ وَيُكْنَى بِأَبَى عَبْدِ
 اللَّهِ وَأَبَى عَمْرٍو وَالْأَغْلَبُ مِنْهُمَا أَبُو عَبْدِ اللَّهِ وَأُمُّهُ
 أَرْوَى بِنْتُ كُرَيْزٍ وَكَانَ لَهُ مِنْ آلَوَيْدِ عَبْدِ اللَّهِ الْأَكْبَرِ

وعبدُ الله الأصغرُ أمَّهما رُقيَّةُ بنتُ رسولِ الله صلعم
 وأَبانُ وخَالِدٌ وسَعِيدٌ والوَلِيدُ والمُغِيرَةُ وَعَبْدُ الْمَلِكِ
 وأُمُّ أَبَانٍ وأُمُّ سَعِيدٍ وأُمُّ عمرو وعائِشَةُ وكان عبدُ
 الله الأكبرُ يُلقَّبُ بالمُطَرَفِ الحُسَنةَ وجَماله وكان
 كثيرَ التزويجِ كثيرَ الطَّلَاقِ وكان أَبانُ أبْرَصَ أحولُ قد⁵
 حملَ عنه أصحابُ الحديثِ عِدَّةٌ مِنَ السُّنَنِ وكان
 سَعِيدٌ أحولَ مجيلاً وقُتِلَ في زَمَنِ مُعَاوِيَةَ وكان الوليدُ
 صاحبُ شَرَابٍ وفتوةٍ وهجون وقُتِلَ أبوه وهو مَخْلُوقُ
 الوجهِ سَكَرانُ عليه مَصَبَّغَاتٌ واسعةٌ وبلغ عبدُ الله
 الأصغرُ مِنَ السِّنِّ سِتّاً وسَبْعِينَ سَنَةً فنقره دِيكٌ على عَيْنَيْهِ¹⁰
 فكان ذلك سَبَبَ موْتِهِ وعبدُ الملك مات صغيراً ولا
 عَقِبَ لَهُ*

وكان عثمانُ في نِهايةِ الجُودِ والكَرَمِ والسَّماحةِ
 والبَدَلِ في القريبِ والبعيدِ فسلِكَ عَمَّالُهُ وكثيْرٌ مِنَ
 أَهْلِ عَصْرِهِ طَريقَتَهُ وتَأَسَّوْا بِفِعْلِهِ وبنى داره بالمدينة¹⁵
 وشيّدَها بالْحَجَرِ والكَلسِ وجعل أبوابها مِنَ السَّاجِ
 والعرعرِ وأَقْتَنَى أَمْوالاً وَجِناناً وعيونا بالمدينة وَدُكِرَ

أَنَّ عَثْمَانَ يَوْمَ قُتِلَ كَانَ لَهُ عِنْدَ خَازِنِهِ مِنَ الْبَالِ
خَمْسُونَ وَمِائَةً أَلْفَ دِينَارٍ وَأَلْفَ أَلْفِ دِرْهَمٍ وَقِيمَةُ
ضِيَاعِهِ بِوَادِي الْقُرَى وَحَنَيْنٍ وَغَيْرِهَا مِائَةُ أَلْفِ
دِينَارٍ وَخَلْفَ خَيْلًا وَإِبِلًا كَثِيرَةً *

5 وَكَانَ عُمَالُهُ عَلَى أَعْمَالِهِ جَمَاعَةً مِنْهُمْ الْوَلِيدُ بْنُ
عُقْبَةَ بْنِ أَبِي مُعَيْطٍ عَلَى الْكُوفَةِ وَهُوَ مِمَّنْ أَخْبَرَ
رَسُولُ اللَّهِ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ أَنَّ مِنْ أَهْلِ النَّارِ فَصَرَفَ عَنْ
الْكُوفَةِ الْوَلِيدَ بْنَ عُقْبَةَ وَوَلَّاهَا سَعِيدَ بْنَ الْعَاصِ
وَكَانَ السَّبَبُ فِي صَرْفِ الْوَلِيدِ وَوَلَايَةِ سَعِيدٍ عَلَى مَا
10 رَوَى أَنَّ الْوَلِيدَ كَانَ شَرِبَ مَعَ نَدَمَائِهِ وَمُغَنِّيَيْهِ مِنْ
أَوَّلِ اللَّيْلِ إِلَى الصَّبَاحِ فَلَمَّا آذَنَهُ الْمُؤَدِّنُ بِالصَّلَاةِ
خَرَجَ مُتَفَضِّلًا فِي غِلَاظِلِهِ فَتَقَدَّمَ إِلَى الْحِجْرَابِ فِي صَلَاةِ
الصُّبْحِ فَصَلَّى بِهِمْ أَرْبَعَ رَكَعَاتٍ وَقَالَ أَتُرِيدُونَ أَنْ
أَزِيدَكُمْ وَقِيلَ إِنَّهُ قَالَ فِي سُجُودِهِ وَقَدْ أَطَالَ أَشْرَبُ
15 وَأَسْقِنِي فَقَالَ لَهُ بَعْضُ مَنْ كَانَ خَلْفَهُ فِي الصَّفِّ
الْأَوَّلِ مَا تُرِيدُ لَا زَادَكَ اللَّهُ مَزِيدَ الْخَيْرِ وَاللَّهُ مَا
أَعْجَبُ إِلَّا مِمَّنْ بَعَثَكَ إِلَيْنَا وَالْيَا وَعَلَيْنَا أَمِيرًا فَحَصَبَ

الناس الوليدَ بِحَصَى الْمَسْجِدِ فَدَخَلَ قَصْرَهُ يَتَرَنِّحُ
 وَشَاعَ بِالْكُوفَةِ فِعْلُهُ وَظَهَرَ فُسْقُهُ وَمُدَاوَمَتُهُ شُرْبَ الْخَمْرِ
 فَهَجَمَ عَلَيْهِ جَمَاعَةٌ مِنَ الْمَسْجِدِ فَوَجَدُوهُ سَكَرَانَ
 مُضْطَجِعًا عَلَى سَرِيرِهِ لَا يَعْقِلُ فَأَيَّقُوهُ مِنْ رَقَدَتِهِ فَلَمْ
 يَسْتَيْقِظْ ثُمَّ تَقَيَّأَ عَلَيْهِمْ مَا شَرِبَ مِنَ الْخَمْرِ فَأَنْتَزَعُوا⁵
 خَاتَمَهُ مِنْ يَدِهِ وَخَرَجُوا مِنْ قُورِهِمْ إِلَى الْمَدِينَةِ فَأَتَيَا
 اثْنَانِ مِنْهُمْ عَثْمَانَ بْنَ عَفَّانٍ فَشَهِدَا عِنْدَهُ عَلَى
 الْوَلِيدِ أَنَّهُ شَرِبَ الْخَمْرَ فَقَالَ عَثْمَانُ وَمَا يُدْرِيكُمَا أَنَّهُ
 شَرِبَ الْخَمْرَ فَقَالَا هِيَ الْخَمْرُ الَّتِي كُنَّا نَشْرُبُهَا فِي
 الْجَاهِلِيَّةِ وَأَخْرَجَا خَاتَمَهُ فَدَفَعَاهُ إِلَيْهِ فَرَجَرَهَا وَدَفَعَ¹⁰
 فِي صُدُورِهَا وَقَالَ تَنَحَّيَا عَنِّي فَخَرَجَا مِنْ عِنْدِهِ وَأَتَيَا
 عَلِيًّا رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُ فَاخْبَرَاهُ بِالْقِصَّةِ فَأَتَى عَثْمَانُ
 وَهُوَ يَقُولُ دَفَعَتِ الشُّهُودَ وَأَبْطَلَتِ الْحُدُودَ فَقَالَ لَهُ
 عَثْمَانُ فَمَا تَرَى قَالَ أَرَى أَنْ تَبْعَثَ إِلَى صَاحِبِكَ فَتُخَضِّرَهُ
 فَإِنْ أَقَامَا الشَّهَادَةَ عَلَيْهِ فِي وَجْهِهِ وَلَمْ يَدْرَأْ عَنْ نَفْسِهِ¹⁵
 بِحُجَّةٍ أَقْبَتَ عَلَيْهِ الْحَدَّ فَلَمَّا حَضَرَ الْوَلِيدُ دَعَاَهَا
 عَثْمَانُ فَأَقَامَا الشَّهَادَةَ عَلَيْهِ وَلَمْ يَدُلْ بِحُجَّةٍ فَأَلْقَى

عثمان السَّوْطُ إِلَى عَلِيٍّ فَقَالَ عَلِيٌّ لِابْنِهِ الْحَسَنِ قُمْ يَا بُنَيَّ
 فَاقِمْ عَلَيْهِ مَا أَوْجَبَهُ اللَّهُ فَقَالَ يَكْفِينِيهِ بَعْضُ مَنْ
 تَرَى فَلَمَّا رَأَى امْتِنَاعَ الْجَمَاعَةِ عَنْ إِقَامَةِ الْحَدِّ عَلَيْهِ
 تَوَقَّيًّا لِعِصْبِ عُثْمَانَ لِقَرَابَتِهِ مِنْهُ أَخَذَ عَلِيٌّ السَّوْطَ
 5 وَدَنَا مِنْهُ فَلَمَّا أَقْبَلَ نَحْوَهُ سَبَّهَ الْوَلِيدُ وَقَالَ يَا صَاحِبَ
 مَكِيسٍ فَقَالَ عَقِيلُ بْنُ أَبِي طَالِبٍ وَكَانَ مِمَّنْ حَضَرَ
 إِنَّكَ لَتَتَكَلَّمُ يَا أَبَنَ أَبِي مُعَيْطٍ كَأَنَّكَ لَا تَدْرِي مَنْ
 أَنْتَ وَأَنْتَ عِلْمٌ مِنْ أَهْلِ صَفُورِيَّةَ وَهِيَ قَرِيَّةٌ بَيْنَ
 عَمَّا وَالْجَبُونِ مِنَ أَعْمَالِ الْأُرْدُنِّ مِنْ بِلَادِ طَبْرِقَةَ كَانَ
 10 ذِكْرُ أَنَّ أَبَاهُ كَانَ يَهُودِيًّا مِنْهَا فَأَقْبَلَ الْوَلِيدُ يَرَوُّهُ
 مِنْ عَلِيٍّ فَأَجْتَذَبَهُ عَلِيٌّ فَضَرَبَ بِهِ الْأَرْضَ وَعَلَاهُ
 بِالسَّوْطِ فَقَالَ عُثْمَانُ لَيْسَ لَكَ أَنْ تَفْعَلَ بِهِ هَذَا قَالَ
 بَلَى وَشَرًّا مِنْ هَذَا إِذَا فَسَقَ وَمَنْعَ حَقِّ اللَّهِ تَعَالَى
 أَنْ يُؤْخَذَ مِنْهُ * وَوَلَّى الْكَوْفَةَ بَعْدَهُ سَعِيدَ بْنِ الْعَاصِ
 15 فَلَمَّا دَخَلَ سَعِيدُ الْكَوْفَةَ وَالْيَا أَبَى أَنْ يَصْعَدَ
 الْمِنْبَرَ حَتَّى يُغْسَلَ وَأَمَرَ بِغَسْلِهِ وَقَالَ إِنَّ الْوَلِيدَ كَانَ
 نَجَسًا رَجَسًا *

وكان بلغ الوليدَ عن رجلٍ من اليهودِ مِن
 ساكني قريةٍ من قرى الكوفة انه يعمل أنواعا من
 السحر والخيالات فاحضره فأراه في المسجد ضربا من
 التخاييل وهو أنه أظهر له في الليل قتيلا عظيما على
 فرسٍ يركض في صحن المسجد ثم صار اليهودي⁵
 ناقةً تمشي على الحبل ثم أراه صورة حمار دخل من
 فيه وخرج من ذبـره ثم ضرب عنق رجلٍ وفرق
 بين جسده ورأسه ثم أمر السيف عليه فقام الرجل
 وكان جماعة من اهل الكوفة حضروا منهم جندب
 ابن كعب الأزدي فجعل يستعيد بالله من فجعل¹⁰
 الشيطان ومن عمل يبعد عن الرحمن وعلم أن ذلك
 هو ضرب من التخيل والسحر فأخترط سيفه وضرب
 اليهودي ضربة أدارت رأسه عن بدنه وقال * جاء
 الحق وزهق الباطل إن الباطل كان زهوقا¹ وقد قيل
 أن ذلك كان نهارا وأن جندبا خرج الى السوق¹⁵
 ودنا من بعض الصياقلة فأخذ منه سيفا ثم أقبل

¹ Sur. 17, 83.

فِي الزَّحَامِ وَقَدْ سَتَرَ السَّيْفَ فَضْرَبَ بِهِ عُنُقَ الْيَهُودِيِّ
 وَقَالَ إِنْ كُنْتَ صَادِقًا فَأَخِي نَفْسُكَ فَأَنْكَرَ عَلَيْهِ
 الْوَلِيدُ ذَلِكَ وَأَرَادَ أَنْ يَضْرِبَ عُنُقَهُ فَقَامَ قَوْمٌ مِنَ
 الْأَزْدِ فَقَالُوا لَا تَقْتُلْ وَاللَّهِ صَاحِبَنَا فَصَيَّرَهُ فِي الْحَبْسِ
 ٥ وَأَرَادَ قَتْلَهُ غِيْلَةً فَكَانَ يَصَلِّي اللَّيْلَ كُلَّهُ فَنَظَرَ
 السَّجَّانُ إِلَى قِيَامِهِ لَيْلَةً إِلَى الصُّبْحِ فَقَالَ لَهُ أَنْجِ
 نَفْسَكَ فَقَالَ لَهُ جُنْدُبٌ تَقْتُلُ بِي فَقَالَ لَيْسَ ذَلِكَ
 بِكَثِيرٍ فِي مَرْضَاةِ اللَّهِ وَالِدَفْعِ عَنِّي وَلِيِّي مِنْ أَوْلِيَاءِ
 اللَّهِ فَلَمَّا أَصْبَحَ الْوَلِيدُ دَعَا بِهِ وَقَدْ اسْتَعَدَّ لِقَتْلِهِ
 ١٠ فَلَمْ يَجِدْهُ فَسَأَلَ السَّجَّانَ فَاخْبِرْهُ بِهِرَبِهِ فَضْرَبَ
 عُنُقَ السَّجَّانِ وَصَلَبَهُ بِالْكُنَاسَةِ*

B. TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ARABIC.

Preliminary remarks.

Words included within brackets [] are to be omitted in translating; those within parentheses () either represent an Arabic word which is to be added, or give the literal translation of an idiomatic phrase. Nominal sentences are distinguished by a bracketed verb (usually a form of "to be") or pronoun between the subject and the predicate. In the other (verbal) sentences, the verb is to be placed before the subject; the object of the verb is to be placed after the subject, if it is a noun, and after the verb, if it is a pronoun governed by the preposition belonging to the verb. A pronoun in the accusative is of course always a suffix (§ 11 b, but cfr. § 46). In general the position of the Arabic words has been retained as far as possible. The English past tenses are usually to be translated by the Arabic perfect, the present and future by the imperfect. All Arabic nouns, not in the status constructus, receive the article, even when in English it may be wanting, except those which are distinguished by having the indefinite article "a, an" before them (cfr. § 84 b). Adjectives must follow their nouns and agree with them in gender, number (but cfr. § 62) and case. Pronouns agreeing with verbs are not to be separately translated. A preposition after a verb is usually entered in the glossary under the heading of the verb; if not found there, it must be looked for separately. Exceptions to the above rules are pointed out in the notes.

I.

Nominal Sentences.¹

1. The glory of the man [are] his sons, and the solicitude of the man [are] his dwelling and his neighbour.—2. The elegance of the man [lies] in his tongue, and the elegance of the woman [lies] in her understanding.—3. The liberal [man is] related to God.—4. The worst of repentance [is] at the day² of resurrection.—5. The love of the world [is] the beginning of every sin.—6. The promise of the king [is] a security.—7. The learned [men are] the heirs of the prophets.—8. Wisdom [is] for the character³ like medicine for the body.³—9. The world [is] the prison of the believer and the paradise of the unbeliever.—10. Contentment [is a part] of⁴ the nature³ of the domestic animals.—11. The malady of covetousness has no (not is for it a) cure; and the disease of ignorance has no (not is for it a) physician.—12. The nutriment of the body³ [are] (the) beverages and (the) viands, and the nutriment of the understanding [is] wisdom and learning.—13. Money has

¹ § 92 seqq.

² § 82 a.

³ plur.

⁴ مِنْ.

(to money [is]) a difficult entrance and an easy exit.—
 14. Verily¹ God [is] forgiving and² compassionate.—
 15. Verily ye³ [are] in a manifest error.—16. The
 nobles of⁴ Pharaoh's folk said⁵, "Verily this [is] surely⁶
 "a learned enchanter".—17. Verily in that⁷ [lies] surely
 an example for the unbelievers.—18. Flight in its
 [proper] time [is] better than endurance in its wrong
 time (in another than its [proper] time).—19. There
 is no (not⁸ [is there]) strength and no (not⁸) power
 except with God, the High, the Mighty.—20. The best
 of gifts [is] understanding, and the worst of misfort-
 unes [is] ignorance.—

II.

Verbal sentences.⁹

a. The strong verb.

21. Jonah came out from the whale's belly.—
 22. Zaid killed Muhammed.—23. They gave (beat)
 Omar a violent beating¹⁰.—24. The direction of prayer
 was shifted¹¹ from Jerusalem to Mecca.—25. God [is]
 cognizant of what ye are doing.—26. Verily⁷ God

¹ § 95 a. ² § 97. ³ suffix. ⁴ مِنْ. ⁵ perf. sing. § 91 a.

⁶ § 95 a. rem. ⁷ § 95 a. ⁸ § 81 b. ⁹ § 90 seqq. ¹⁰ § 80.

¹¹ fem.

provides for every one his sufficiency.—27. Learning and money [they] cover up¹ every fault, and poverty and ignorance [they] uncover¹ every fault.—28. They took him away and put him in the bottom of the well.—29. The brothers of Joseph returned² to their father.—30.) Why hast thou³ not⁴ washed thy shirt? —31. The most⁵ of mankind are not grateful².—32. They⁶ [are] unbelievers in⁷ the future life.—33. We made heaven [to be] a [well-]preserved roof.—34. Do not do good out of⁸ hypocrisy, and do not leave off [doing] it out of⁸ modesty.—

35. Why do ye render waste the cultivated⁹ countries?—36. Thereupon we sent Moses and his brother Aaron with our signs to Pharaoh and his nobles; then they declared the two of them¹⁰ to be liars.—37. The angels said¹¹, "O Mary! be obedient to thy Lord and "prostrate thyself; verily¹² God giveth thee glad "tidings of a Word from him; and he¹³ [is one] of¹⁴ "those¹⁵ who are placed near [to God], and he shall "talk to mankind in the cradle!"—38. It is not good to hurry (not is good the hurrying), except in the

¹ dual. ² plur. ³ fem. ⁴ لَمْ § 76 c. ⁵ sing. ⁶ pronoun.
⁷ ب. ⁸ § 82 d. ⁹ § 62. ¹⁰ suffix in the dual. ¹¹ § 91 b;
¹² § 95 a. ¹³ pronoun. ¹⁴ مِنْ. ¹⁵ part.

marrying of a¹ daughter, and the burying of a¹ dead [man], and the entertaining of a¹ guest.—39.) Glorify² God in the early morning³ and [late] in the evening³.

40. Verily the hypocrite has (to the hyp. [belong]) three characteristics; his tongue contradicts his heart, and his speech his action, and his exterior his interior.—41. The men of his people used to sit with him⁴ on account of his learning. — 42. Verily the holy war [is] incumbent⁵ on you.—43. The vehemence of a (the) man [is what] causes him to perish⁶.—44. The head of al-Husain the son of Alî was brought into the city⁷ of Damascus⁸ and was placed before Yazîd.—45. Verily we⁹ have become Muslims, so become Muslims ye¹⁰ [also]!—46. Do not talk to one another with disgraceful talk!—47. Every thing has (to every thing [belongs]) an indication; and the indication of understanding [is] reflection, and the indication of reflection [is] being silent.—48. We started off towards Bagdad to bring an action against one another¹¹ before¹² its¹³ governor.—49. The most excellent [kind] of praise [is], “[there is] no¹⁴ god

¹ § 84 b. ² plur. ³ indetermin. accus. § 82 a. ⁴ كَانَ sing., then subject, then the verb in the plur. ⁵ Part. ⁶ nominal sent. § 92 c α. ⁷ acc. ⁸ § 88 a. ⁹ § 71 c. ¹⁰ pronoun.
¹¹ part. § 82 b. ¹² إِلَى ¹³ § 50. ¹⁴ § 81 b.

except God!" and the most excellent of [good] works [are] the five¹ prayers; and the most excellent [kind] of character [is] (the) being humble.—50. They fought with one another four days;² then the Byzantines were routed³.—51. What is disliked in⁴ the king [is] the being devoted to (the) pleasures, and the hearing of (the) 'songs and the spending of (the) time therewith (with that).—52. They said, "O our "father! verily we⁵ went away, running races⁶, and "left Joseph with⁷ our baggage; then the wolf ate "him".—53. Observe what [is] in the heart of thy brother by means of his eye, for⁸ the eye [is] the title-page of the heart!—54. In the fourth year from the birth of Muhammed the [two] angels⁹ cut open¹⁰ his belly and extracted¹¹ his heart; then they cut it¹¹ [his heart] open and extracted¹¹ from it a black clot of blood; thereupon they washed¹¹ his heart and his belly with snow.—55. They conversed¹² about the case of the Apostle.—

56. Verily God hath (to God [are])¹³ servants whom¹⁴ he distinguishes (he distinguishes them) with

¹ masc. determ. after the noun, § 67 a. ² § 82 a. ³ fem. sing.
⁴ ل. ⁵ § 71 c. ⁶ imperf. merely, § 100 b. ⁷ عِنْدَ with gen.
⁸ ق. ⁹ dual. ¹⁰ sing. § 91 a. ¹¹ dual. ¹² § 91 rem. a.
¹³ § 95 a. ¹⁴ without relative particle § 99 b.

his favours.—57. Restrain thyself from meat¹ which² causes thee to acquire an indigestion, and [from] an action which² occasions thee regret³.—58. Thou hast fallen in love⁴ with a girl, a possessor of beauty³ and elegance³.—59. Muhammed said, "Help thy brother, "[whether he be] doing wrong⁵ or wronged⁵!" They asked, "O Apostle of God! how shall we help him, "[if he be] doing wrong⁵?" He said, "By restraining "him from doing wrong!"—60. Do not turn away⁶ a beggar!—61. A servant does not believe, until he love for his brother that which he loves for himself.—

b. The weak verb.

62. A poor [man] begged of me, so I gave him [two] pieces of money⁷.—63. Be mindful of death, for he⁸ takes hold of your forelocks; if⁹ ye fly from him, he overtakes you, and if⁹ ye stay, he seizes you.—64. Music [is] like the spirit and wine [is] like the body; then through their¹⁰ being combined •is born joy.—65. The Apostle used to¹¹ preach to his

¹ indetermin. ² without relative particle § 99 b. ³ indetermin.
⁴ § 73 e. ⁵ § 82 b. ⁶ § 35, rem. 1. ⁷ dual. ⁸ pronoun with
 foll. part. ⁹ § 102. ¹⁰ dual-suffix. ¹¹ cfr. p. 90, rem. 4.

companions and to exhort them and to teach them the beauties of character¹.—66. Verily² our friends shall³ entrust to us their secrets.—67. The lust of⁴ the world [it] entails care and sorrow, and abstinence with regard to it [it] restores the heart and the body.—68. Moses said, "I have brought⁵ you an evidence "from your Lord; so let go⁶ along with me the Sons "of Israel!"—69. Depend on the Living [one], who does not die!—70. He pleases me, who makes poetry to⁷ show his education, not to⁷ gain, and applies himself to singing to⁷ enjoy himself, not to⁷ seek for himself [reward]. — 71. Demand help of the good (people⁸ of the good), and of those that act well (and of the acting well).—72. Choose⁹ whichever of the pages thou wilt!—73. Supplicate much (make much the supplicating), for thou¹⁰ dost not know when answer, will¹ be given thee!—74. Restrain your tongues and lower your glances and guard your continence! —

75. A (the) kingdom [it]¹¹ is made flourishing through justice and is protected by courage and is ruled through [good] government.—76. [Good] govern-

1 pl. determ. 2 § 95 a. 3 و § 74 a. 4 قَدْ 5 § 73 e.
 6 sing. 7 § 82 d. 8 § 88 b. 9 fem. 10 § 71 c. 11 nominal sentence.

ment [is], that¹ the gate of the chief be guarded² in the [proper] time of being guarded³, and opened in the [proper] time of being open³, and the gatekeeper friendly.—77. Jalâl-al-dîn used not to go to sleep⁴ except drunk⁵, nor (and not) to arise in the morning except seedy and tipsy⁶.—78. It is not seemly for the wise [man], that⁷ he address a (the) fool, like as it is not seemly for the sober [man], that he address a (the) drunken [man].—79. People⁸ of the world [are] like folk in a ship, who⁹ are carried onwards whilst they are sleeping¹⁰.—80. The evil-doer [he] does not consider¹¹ mankind except [as] evil, because he¹² sees them with the eye of his nature.—81. God elected Abraham [as] an intimate friend.—82. Every affair in the world [is] transitory.—83. Wickedness [is] to be feared¹³, and no one (not) fears it except the intelligent [man]; and good [is] to be hoped for¹⁴, and every one¹⁵ seeks it.—84. [To] a servant¹⁶ shall not¹⁷ be given [anything] more ample than 'endurance.—85. I looked into Paradise, then I saw the most of its inhabitants [to be] the poor; and I looked

¹ § 96. ² كَانْ with part. § 81 a. ³ § 34 rem. ⁴ cfr. § p. 90, n. 4.
⁵ § 82 b. ⁶ § 82 b. ⁷ § 96. ⁸ § 88 b. ⁹ § 99 b, c. ¹⁰ § 100 a.
¹¹ § 92 c, α. ¹² suff. ¹³ § 77 b. § 39 b. ¹⁴ § 40 rem. c. ¹⁵ أَكْدُ.
¹⁶ § 79. rem. b. ¹⁷ كَنْ § 75.

into hell-fire, then I saw the most of its inhabitants [to be] (the) women.—86.) He¹ whose counsel is asked [is] one¹ in whom one confides; and he¹ who asks counsel [is] one¹ who is to be aided.—87.) Do not put off² the work of to-day till to-morrow³.—88.) Thou dost not⁴ see in the creation of God any⁵ imperfection.—89.) Little which¹ continues [is] better than much which¹ is interrupted.—90. Pharaoh said, “We will⁶ kill⁷ their sons and spare their women.”—91. A Bedouin looked at a gold-piece; then he said, “How small⁸ is thy size and how great⁸ thy value!”—92. The envious [man] is not well-pleased with thee⁹, until thou diest!—93. Be [the] tail and be not [the] head! for¹⁰ the tail escapes whilst¹¹ the head perishes.

III.

Various subordinate sentences.

• 94. Muhammed said, “Do not begin¹² with the Jews and the Christians by (the) greeting, but when

¹ part. ² § 76 b. ³ indetermin. ⁴ ل. ⁵ § 93 b. ⁶ ٤,
 § 74 a. ⁷ § 18. ⁸ § 44. ⁹ verbal sentence! ¹⁰ § 95 a; nomin.
 sent. ¹¹ § 100 a. ¹² plur.

ye meet one of them¹, (then)² force him towards the narrowest place (his narrowest).—95. When comes to thy knowledge concerning thy brother what is evil, then seek for him an excuse; but if thou dost not³ find [one], then say, "Perhaps he has an excuse."—96. If⁴ thou eat little, thou shalt live long.—97. If⁴ ye talk in a good manner (make ye good the talk), ye shall enter Paradise.—98. Alî said,—may⁵ God be well pleased with him⁶.—"O⁷ mankind! do not hope except for your Lord, and do not dread [anything] except your transgressions; and be not he ashamed who⁸ doth not know to⁹ learn, and be not he ashamed who⁸ knoweth to⁹ teach!"—99. The subsistence which thou seekest is like the shadow (the likeness of the subsistence... [is] the likeness of the shadow) which moves on along with thee; thou¹⁰ dost not overtake it in pursuing¹¹ [it], then when thou turnest¹² away from it, it follows thee!¹³—100. A man said to the Apostle of God: "O Muhammed, give me thy cloak!"; then he threw it down to¹⁴ him; then he said: "I do not¹⁵ want it"; then he (Muh.) said, "May¹⁶ God combat thee! thou didst wish to⁹ declare me to be niggardly,

¹ أَكْدَ with gen. ² § 104 c. ³ §§ 102, 76 c. ⁴ § 103 b.
⁵ § 73 d. ⁶ after the subject. ⁷ أَيُّهَا § 61. ⁸ مَنْ. ⁹ أَنْ
 with subj. ¹⁰ pronoun. ¹¹ part. 82 b. ¹² § 101. ¹³ perf.
¹⁴ إِلَى ¹⁵ مَا with imperf. ¹⁶ § 73 d.

but (and) God has not made¹ me [to be] niggardly!" —101. If anyone² long for Paradise, he is unmindful of lusts³. —102. That a man give in alms in his lifetime a drachma (the alms-giving⁴ of a man—a drachma) [is] better for him than that he give in alms a hundred drachmæ at his death.

103. The Prophet—may God bless him and save him—said, "If anyone⁵ drink wine in this world, [and] thereupon do not⁶ repent, he shall be forbidden it⁷ in the future life." —104. If anyone light a lamp in a mosque, then verily the angels [they] will beg forgiveness for him as long as⁸ that lamp continues kindled⁹. —105. The reed-pen [is] a tree, whose¹⁰ fruit [are] the ideas, and thought [is] a sea, whose¹⁰ pearls [are] wisdom. —106. Verily the dead [man] and he who¹¹ has no religion (he who no¹² religion to him) [are] equal¹³; and he has no¹² trustworthiness [in him] who¹¹ has no¹² piety. —107. Every woman that¹⁴ has no¹² modesty [is] like a dish that has no¹² salt. —108. If anyone's¹⁵ tattle is much, his erring is much [also]. —109. The anger of the

¹ § 76 c. ² § 102. ³ determ. ⁴ inf. ⁵ § 102. ⁶ لَمْ § 76 c.
⁷ § 79 rem. b. ⁸ § 101. ⁹ partic. pass. § 81 a. ¹⁰ § 99 b.
¹¹ مَنَّ. ¹² § 81 b. ¹³ sing. ¹⁴ § 99 b, c. ¹⁵ § 99 c.

noble [man], although his fire flare up¹, [is] like smoke of wood² in which [there is] no³ core.—110. To the ignorant [man] are forgiven⁴ seventy⁵ transgressions, ere to the knowing [man] is forgiven one.

111. Be not⁶ like the needle, which⁷ clothes mankind whilst⁸ it [is] naked, nor (and) like the wick, which⁷ gives light to mankind whilst it is consumed⁹. — 112. The believer [he] does not escape from the chastisement of God, until he leave four things, lying, and pride, and niggardliness, and evil thinking (evil of the thinking).—113. It is seemly for the younger [ones] to¹⁰ precede the elders in three places; when¹¹ they travel by night¹², or wade through a stream, or encounter horsemen.—114. Do not drink (the) poison out of reliance¹³ on the antidote which thou hast (that which [is] with¹⁴ thee of¹⁵ the antidote).—115. Paradise is desirous¹⁶ of four [kinds of] folk; the first¹⁷ of them¹⁸ [are] those who have fed¹⁹ a hungry [man], and the second [are] those who have clothed¹⁹ a naked [man], and the third [are] those who fast²⁰ in²¹ the month of Ramadân²², and the

¹ § 102. ² indetermin. § 99 b. ³ § 81 b. ⁴ § 91 a. ⁵ § 67 b.
⁶ لَا with energ. I. ⁷ § 99 b, rem. ⁸ § 100 a. ⁹ § 100 a, with imperf. ¹⁰ § 96. ¹¹ § 101. ¹² § 82 a. ¹³ § 82 d. ¹⁴ عِنْدَ.
¹⁵ مِنْ. ¹⁶ part. ¹⁷ masc. ¹⁸ suffix in fem. sing. ¹⁹ perf. sing.
²⁰ imperf. sing. ²¹ § 82 a. ²² § 88 a.

fourth [are] those who read¹ the Koran. — 116. Socrates was asked, "Why hast thou not² mentioned in thy law-code the punishment of him who kills³ his brother?" He said, "I know not that this [is] a thing which exists." — 117. Every thing [it] begins small⁴, thereupon it becomes great, except misfortune⁵; for it begins great, thereupon it becomes small, and every thing [it] becomes cheap, when⁶ it becomes abundant, excepting education; for⁷ when it becomes abundant, it rises in value.

118. After Moses had returned to the Sons of Israel with the Thora (and along with him [was] the Thora), they refused to⁸ accept it and to do according to what [was] in it.—119. God commanded Moses to⁸ fast thirty⁹ days and to purify himself and to purify his garments, and to come to¹⁰ the mountain, that he might talk to him and give him the book.—120. After Damascus was taken¹¹, much folk of¹² its inhabitants joined Heraclius, whilst¹³ he was in¹⁴ Antioch.—121. A certain one of the wise men said, Nothing (not) repels the onslaught of the conquering

¹ imperf. sing. ² § 76 c. ³ § 102. ⁴ § 82 b. ⁵ accus. § 98.
⁶ § 101. ⁷ with suff. § 71 c. ⁸ أَنْ with subj. ⁹ § 82 a. ¹⁰ إِلَى.
¹¹ fem. § 50. ¹² مِنْ. ¹³ § 100 a. ¹⁴ بِ.

enemy like¹ being submissive and giving way, like as² green plants are safe from the vehement wind through their pliancy, because they³ turn along with it, as (how)⁴ it turns.—122. They disagree⁵ concerning Waraka; and of⁶ them [there are] those who assert¹⁰ that he⁷ died a Christian⁸ and did not⁹ reach the appearance of the Prophet; and of⁶ them [there are] those who are of opinion¹⁰ that he⁷ died a Muslim.—123. O [ye two] companions¹¹ of the prison! as to the one of you¹¹, he shall serve to his lord wine¹², and as to the other, he shall be crucified, then shall¹³ the birds eat of⁶ his head; the affair is decreed¹⁴ concerning which ye inquire!—124. The Apostle wrote to chieftains¹² of⁶ the tribes, inviting¹⁵ them to become Muslims¹⁶.—125. A wise [man] was asked, “What [is] the thing, which [it] is not good that it be said, although it be¹⁷ right?” He said, “A man’s eulogizing himself¹⁸”.—126. Woe to [him] who converses with lying, that he may make the people laugh by it!—127. This (the) world and the future life [are] as the East and the West: when thou

¹ مِثْل as subject. § 94 b. ² كَمَا أَنَّ § 95 a. ³ sing. suff.
⁴ § 102. ⁵ § 73 b with قَدْ, § 91 rem. a. ⁶ مِنْ. ⁷ § 95 a.
⁸ § 82 b. ⁹ § 76 c. ¹⁰ § 73 b. ¹¹ dual. ¹² indetermin. ¹³ fem.
¹⁴ § 73 c. ¹⁵ § 74 b. ¹⁶ infin. determ. ¹⁷ كَانَ § 102. ¹⁸ § 87.

approachest one of them¹, thou dost recede from the other.—128. Fear ye God in secret² and do not enter into what is not lawful for you!—129. The devotee without learning [is] like the ass of the mill, who³ goes around and does not get through (cut) the distance.—130. The eye of hate [it] draws forth every fault, and the eye of love [it] does not find the faults.

IV.

Anecdotes.

131. An astrologer was crucified; then he was asked, "Hast thou⁴ seen this in thy star?" Then he said, "I saw a raising up⁵, however I did not⁶ know that it [was to be] upon a piece of wood!"

132. A man knocked at the door of 'Amr the son of 'Ubaid; so he said, "Who [is] this?" He said, "I." He ['Amr] said, "I do not know (I am not I know) among our friends (brothers) [any] one⁷, whose name [is] I."

¹ dual suffix. ² determ. ³ §§ 84 b, 99 b, 56 c. ⁴ with interr. part. هَلْ. ⁵ § 51 a, rem. b. ⁶ § 76 c. ⁷ أَحَدٌ.

133. (The) thieves came¹ in upon Abû Bekr al-Rabbânî, seeking² something (a thing), and he saw them going around³ in the house. Then he said, "O young men! This which ye are seeking⁴ in the night we have already sought⁴ in the day-time, but have not⁵ found it!" So they laughed and went out.

134. It is related⁶, that⁷ a certain one of the polite scholars eulogized a certain one of the princes; so he commanded [that] to him an [ass's] saddle and saddle-girth [should be given]. So he took them⁸ on⁹ his shoulder and went out from his presence¹⁰. Then a certain one of his companions saw him, then said, "What [is] this?" He said, "I eulogized the prince with the most beautiful of my poems, then he invested me with [something] of¹¹ the most glorious of his dresses".

135. Al-Muġîra, the son of Šu'ba said: No one (not)¹² has deceived me except (another than) a youth of¹¹ the Sons of al-Hârit. For I mentioned a woman of theirs (of¹¹ them), that¹³ I should marry her; then he said, "O¹⁴ Prince! [There is] no good¹⁵

¹ § 91 a. ² § 100 b imperf. alone. ³ imperf. ⁴ with suffix.
⁵ مَا. ⁶ § 73 b. ⁷ أَنَّ. ⁸ dual suffix. ⁹ عَلَى. ¹⁰ مِنْ عِنْدِهِ. ¹¹ مِنْ.
¹² § 76 c. ¹³ لِ. ¹⁴ أَيُّهَا § 61. ¹⁵ § 81 b.

for thee in her." So I said, "And why [not]?" He said, "I saw a man kissing¹ her." So I turned from her; then the young man married her. So I reproached him and said, "Didst thou not² inform me that thou³ hadst seen a man kissing her?" He said, "Yes, I saw her father kissing her."

136. Al-Dahhâk the son of Muzâhim said to a Christian, "[How would it be] if⁴ thou wert to become a Muslim?" He said, "I have not⁵ ceased loving⁶ Islâm, except that⁷ my love for wine⁸ prevents me from it." So he said, "Become a Muslim and drink it!" So after he had become a Muslim, he said to him, "Thou hast⁹ become a Muslim, so if thou drink it¹⁰, we shall chastise thee; and if thou apostatize, we shall kill thee, so choose for thyself". Then he chose Islâm and his Islâm was good. So he had taken¹¹ him by stratagem.

137. A Bedouin stole a purse in which (it) [were] pièces of money¹²; thereupon he entered the mosque to pray¹³; and his name was¹⁴ Moses. Then the leader of prayer recited, "And what is that¹⁵ in¹⁶ thy

¹ imperf. ² **أَلَمْ** § 76 c. ³ **أَنْتَ** with suff. ⁴ **لَوْ** § 102.
⁵ **مَا** with perf. ⁶ § 81 a, with indetermin. part. § 87 rem. ⁷ § 95 b.
with foll. verbal sentence. ⁸ § 87. ⁹ § 73 e. ¹⁰ § 102. ¹¹ perf.
¹² indetermin. ¹³ § 74 b. ¹⁴ **كَانَ**. ¹⁵ fem. ¹⁶ **بِ**.

right hand, Oh Moses¹! So he said, "By God, verily thou [art] an enchanter!" Thereupon he threw away the purse and went out.

138. A man claimed the (a) gift of prophecy in the days² of al-Rašid. So after he had appeared before him [the Caliph], he asked him, "What [is that] which is said of thee?" He said, "that I³ am a noble prophet." He asked, "But what⁴ indicates the truth of thy claim?" He said, "Demand what⁵ thou wilt⁶". He said, "I wish that⁷ thou make these⁸ beardless slaves, [who are] standing⁹ [there] this moment¹⁰ [to be furnished] with beards!¹¹" Then he looked down for a while¹², thereupon he raised his head and said, "How is it lawful that I make these¹³ beardless [ones to be furnished] with beards¹⁴ and alter these⁸ beautiful¹⁴ forms? but¹⁵ I will make the bearded ones (owners of beards) beardless in one twinkling." So al-Rašid laughed at him and pardoned him and commanded a present [to be given] to him.

¹ Sura 20, 18. ² § 82 a. ³ § 71 c. ⁴ أَيْ شَيْءٍ. ⁵ § 5 c.
⁶ perf. § 102. ⁷ أَنْ. ⁸ § 62, 84 a, rem. ⁹ determ. § 86 a.
¹⁰ § 84 a. ¹¹ indetermin. ¹² § 82 a. ¹³ plur. ¹⁴ § 62.
¹⁵ وَإِنَّمَا.

139. A person pretended to prophecy¹; then they besought of him in² the presence of al-Ma'mûn a miracle. So he said, "I will cast for you a pebble into the water, then it will dissolve". He [al-Ma'mûn] said, "We are³ content." So he brought out a pebble [which he had] along with him, then cast it into the water; then it dissolved. So they said, "This⁴ is a trick; however, we will give⁵ thee a pebble of our own⁶, and let it dissolve!"⁷ Then he said, "Ye are not⁸ more illustrious⁹ than Pharaoh and I am not (and not I¹⁰) mightier in wisdom¹¹ than Moses, and Pharaoh did not¹² say to Moses, 'I am not¹³ content with what thou doest¹⁴ with thy staff, so that¹⁵ I will give thee a staff of my own¹⁶, which¹⁷ thou shalt make [into] a serpent.'" So al-Ma'mûn laughed and let him pass on

140. It is said¹⁸ that Abû Dulâma¹⁹ the poet was standing²⁰ before al-Saffâh on²¹ a certain day (a certain one of the days). Then he said to him, "Ask of me what thou dost want (thy want)!" So Abû

¹ § 21. ² ب ³ § 73 c. ⁴ § 93 c. ⁵ imperf. ⁶ مِنْ عِنْدِنَا. ⁷ imperf. ⁸ كَيْسٌ § 81 a. ⁹ § 47 e. ¹⁰ pronoun. ¹¹ § 82 c. ¹² § 76 c. ¹³ § 76 c, 73 c. ¹⁴ § 99 c. ¹⁵ حَتَّى with subj. ¹⁶ مِنْ عِنْدِي. ¹⁷ § 99 b, c. ¹⁸ § 73 c. ¹⁹ § 95. ²⁰ كَانَ with part. § 81 a. ²¹ فِي.

Dulâma said to him, "I want a hunting-dog." So he said, "Give ye it¹ to him!" Then he said, "And I want a horse, on³ which I may go forth to hunt." He said, "Give ye it to him!" He said, "And a page², who⁴ will lead the dog and hunt with him." He said, "And give ye him a page!" He said, "And a slave-girl², who⁴ will prepare the game and give us to eat of it." He said, "Give ye him a slave-girl!" He said, "These, O Prince of the Believers! have need of ([there is] no⁵ escape for them from) a dwelling, which⁶ they may inhabit." So he said, "Give ye him a dwelling, which⁶ will contain them!" He said, "And if they have not (and if not is⁷ to them) an estate, then wherefrom shall they live?" He said, "I grant⁸ thee ten cultivated⁹ estates and ten waste estates⁹." He said, "And what [are] the waste⁹ [ones] O Prince of the Believers?" He said, "In which¹⁰ [there are] no plants¹¹." He said, "I⁸ grant thee, O Prince of the Believers, a hundred¹² waste estates of¹³ the deserts of the Sons of Asad." Then he laughed at him and said, "Make them¹⁴ all of them¹⁴ cultivated!¹⁴"

¹ with إِيَّاهُ, which stands last, § 46 b. ² accus. ³ عَلَى (after the verb) § 99 b, c. ⁴ § 99 b. ⁵ § 81 b. ⁶ § 99 b, c. ⁷ لَمْ تَكُنْ.
⁸ § 73 c with قَدْ. ⁹ § 62. ¹⁰ مَا and prep. with pronoun at the end of the sentence. ¹¹ § 81 b. ¹² § 67 c. ¹³ مِنْ. ¹⁴ fem. sing.

141. It is related¹, that Harûn al-Rašîd had (that to H. was²) a black slave-girl, of ugly mien³. Now he scattered one day gold-pieces⁴ among (between) the slave-girls; so the slave-girls set about⁵ gathering⁶ up the gold-pieces, whilst⁷ that slave-girl stood still, looking⁸ at the face of al-Rašîd. Some one asked (it was asked), "Dost thou⁹ not pick up the gold-pieces?" Then she said, "Verily what¹⁰ they seek [are] the gold-pieces, but (and) what¹⁰ I seek [is] the owner of the gold-pieces." Then her speech pleased him; so he placed her near [to him] and brought good upon her. Then the report got to the grandees, that¹¹ Harûn al-Rašîd was enamoured¹² of a black slave-girl. So after that had come to his knowledge, he sent after the whole of the grandees, until he had assembled them in his presence¹³. Then after he had commanded the bringing in¹⁴ of the slave-girls, he gave every one of¹⁵ them a goblet of¹⁵ chrysolite¹⁶ and commanded it to be thrown down¹⁴. But they declined [doing it] in a body (as a whole¹⁷). Then the turn came to (the affair got to) the ugly

1 § 73 c. 2 أَنَّهُ كَانَ لَ 3 § 88 d. 4 indeterminat.
 5 § 91 a. 6 § 74 c, rem. (imp. pl. fem.) 7 § 100 a with part
 8 § 100 b imp. alone. 9 أَلَا fem. 10 part. pass. with suffix.
 11 بِأَنَّ 12 imperf. 13 عِنْدَهُ 14 بِ with inf. and suff. 15 مِنْ.
 16 determ. 17 § 82 b.

slave-girl; but she threw down the goblet and broke it. So they said, "Look¹ at this girl, her name [is] ugly, and her manner [is] ugly, and her action [is] ugly. Then said to her the Caliph, "Why then didst thou break² it?" Then she said, "Thou didst³ command me to break it⁴; so I was of opinion that⁷ in its being broken [lay] a detriment⁵ with regard to the treasure of the Caliph, and in its not being broken (in the lack of its being broken) a detriment⁵ with regard to his command: and the detriment with regard to the first is fitter to keep intact⁶ the inviolability of the command of the Caliph. And I was of opinion that⁷ in its being broken [lay] my being qualified⁸ as⁹ a (the) crazy [one], and in keeping it intact my being qualified⁸ as⁹ a (the) disobedient [one]; and the first [is] more agreeable to me than the second." Then the grandees found¹⁰ that¹¹ to be beautiful of¹² her and praised her for¹³ it and excused the Caliph for¹⁴ loving her. And God knows best ([is] most knowing).

¹ plur. ² 2nd. pers. fem. perf. § 45. ³ § 73 e. ⁴ ب with inf.
⁵ § 95 a. ⁶ § 82 c, indetermin. inf. with following ل § 87. ⁷ أَتَى.
⁸ § 34 rem. ⁹ ب. ¹⁰ § 91 a. ¹¹ at the end. ¹² مِنْ.
¹³ عَلَى. ¹⁴ فِي.

GLOSSARY.

— — —

A.

أ *part. interr.* often in the first half of an alternative question.

أَب *st. c.* أَبُو (§ 65 a) father.

voc. أَبَتِ *du.* أَبَوَانِ *pl.* آبَاءُ ancestors.

إِيل *coll. fem.* camels.

بَنِي *v.* ابْنِ.

أَبَان *Abân, n. of a man.*

أَبِي *imp. a* not to wish, to refuse.

أَتِي *imp. i (imper. ائْتِ c.*

فَ) *c. acc.* to come, come to.

c. ب to bring.

IV c. acc. pers. et r. to give.

لِأَجْلِ *because of.*

أَحَدٌ *fem. إحدَى one.*

أَخَذَ *imp. u* take, take hold of, seize.

c. ب take hold of.

أَخَذَ حَقَّ اللَّهِ مِنْهُ

to execute on a person the punishment decreed by God. *VIII* make, constitute.

أَخَّرَ *V* to draw back.

أَخِرٌ *last, second.*

الْآخِرَةُ *the other, next world.*

أُخْرَى *fem. أخرى other.*

أَدِيمٌ *leather, esp. tanned.*

إِدَاوَةٌ ^s water-vessel made
of skins.

إِذَا ^s *conj.* when, if; *adv.*
there! lo!

إِذَا ^s lo! there came..

إِذَا ^s *adv.* then, in this
case.

أَذِنَ ^s *imp. a* to permit.

IV c. acc. pers. et ب
r. to inform, apprise.

أَذَنَ ^s *pl.* أَذَان ^s ear.

مُؤَذِّن ^s one who chants
the call to prayer.

مَأْرَبُ ^s district in South-
Arabia.

الْأَرْدُنُّ ^s Jordan, Jordan
district.

أَرْضُ ^s *fem.* earth, land,
ground.

أَرْضَةٌ ^s wood-fretter.

أَرْوَى ^s Arwâ, woman's n.

أَزْدُ ^s tribe of Azd.

أَزْدُ ^s the people of the
tribe of Azd.

أَرْدِي ^s of the tribe of
Azd.

سَمَا ^s *v.* اسْمَ

أَسَا ^s *r* to become con-
soled, take example by.

أَصْفُ ^s Asaph.

أَكْفُ ^s ass's saddle.

أَكَلَ ^s *imp. u* to eat.

إِلَّا ^s (إِنْ لَا) except (§ 98);
if not (in an oath:
only).

الَّذِي ^s *fem.* الَّتِي (§ 13 a)
he who; who, which.

آلَفُ ^s *pl.* آلاف thousand.

النَّجْرَجُ ^s kind of aloes-
wood.

إِلَهٌ ^s a god.

إِلَهِ ^s *ex* آل *et* إله God,
Allah.

اللَّهُمَّ O God!

إِلَى *præp.* (§ 71 b) to, towards, in the direction of, opposite.

الْأَمْرُ إِلَيْكَ *command* belongs unto thee.

أَمْ *part. interr.* or, in the second half of an alternative question.

أَمْ *imp. u, c. acc.* to direct one's course by.

أُمَّهَاتُ *pl.* أُمَّهَاتُ mother.

أُمَّة *religious community*, people.

أَمَّا *part. c. seq.* ف as to, as regards.

أَمْرٌ *imp. u, c. acc. p. et r.* to order, command, *c.* *pers.* to have brought.

• VIII to command.

أَمْرٌ *command*, power; thing, affair.

أَمِيرٌ *commander*, prince.

بِالْأَمْسِ *yesterday*.

أَمِنَ *IV* to believe.

أَمِينٌ *trustworthy*.

أَمَانَةٌ *a trust committed to one*.

أُمَيَّةٌ *Umayya*, man's name.

أَنَا *pron. I*.

أَنَّ (§ 75, 96) that (*conj.*).

أَنَّ (§ 95) that (*conj.*).

أَنَّ ذَٰلِكَ *that was, because*.

إِنْ (§ 102) if.

إِنْ (§ 95) lo! verily, (often to be left untranslated).

أَنْتَ *pron.; fem.* أَنْتِ, thou.

أَنْتِ *II* to make feminine, to imitate women.

إِنْسٌ *coll.* human beings, mankind.

نَاسٌ *et pl.* إِنْسَانٌ human being.

- ^{بَعْدَ} *imp. u vel* ^{بَعِدَ} *imp. a* to be distant.
^{بَعْدَ} *adv.* afterwards.
^{بَعْدَ} *præp.* after, after the departure, after the death of . . .
^{بَعْدَ} *مِنْ* after the death of.
^{بَعِيدَ} distant, far off.
^{بَعْضَ} one (§ 88 b), portion, piece; some.
^{بَعْضَ} ^{بَعْضَ} one another.
^{بَغَى} *VII* to be necessary.
^{بَقِيَ} *imp. a* to remain, remain over, remain alive.
^{أَبُو بَكْرٍ} Abû Bekr, name of the first Caliph.
^{بَكَى} *imp. i* to weep.
IV caus.
^{بَلَّ} on the contrary, but.
- ^{بَلَدَ} *pl.* ^{بِلَادَ} land, village (*pl. coll.* country).
^{بَلَغَ} *imp. u, c. acc.* to reach, arrive at, come to one's knowledge.
II cause to reach.
^{بِلْقِيسُ} Bilkis, queen of Sheba.
^{بَلَاَ} *imp. u* to prove, test.
^{بَلَى} *part.* of course, but certainly.
^{بِمَ} (*ex* ^{بِمَا}) wherewith?
^{بَنَى} *imp. i* to build.
^{بِنَاءَ} *inf.* building.
^{إِبْنُ} (§ 65 b ^{بَن} § 60) son.
^{إِبْنُ ثَلَاثَ سِنِينَ} three years old.
^{بُنَى} little son.
^{بِنْتَ} (§ 65 i) daughter.

- ^sبَاب *pl.* ^sأَبْوَاب gate, door.
^sبَيْت *pl.* ^sأَبْيَات house,
 room.
^sبَيَاض whiteness, white
 colour.
^sأَبْيَض *fem.* ^sبَيْضَاء
 white.
^sبَاع *med.* ^sي *III c. acc. pers.*
 swear allegiance to.
^sبَانَ *med.* ^sي *IV* to be
 clear, evident.
^sبَيْن *præp.* between.
^sبَيْن يَدَي *prop.* be-
 tween the hands of
 . . . , = before.
^sبَيْنُون name of a castle
 in South Arabia.
^sتَابُوت *masc.* coffin.
^sتَبَّ *X* to be well ar-
 ranged, to be in good
 order.
^sتَبِع *imp. a, c. acc.* follow.
VIII id.
^sتَحْتَ *præp.* under, under-
 neath.
^sتَحْت *id.*
^sتَدْمُر Tadmor, Palmyra in
 Syria.
^sتَرَكَ *imp. u* to leave be-
 hind, give up; to make
 a thing to be . . . and
 leave it so.
^sتِسْعَة *fem.* ^sتِسْع nine.
^sتِلْكَ *fem.* (§ 12 c) that.
^sتِهَامَة name of the coast-
 region of South-western
 Arabia.
^sتَاج *pl.* ^sتِيَجَان crown,
 diadem.
^sتَايم Taim, a man's name.
^sتَثَبْتَ *imp. u* to be settled.
IV to settle, establish.
^sالتَّعْلَبِي al-Ta'labī; n. of a
 man † 427 Hej. (1035/6).
^sثَقَبَ *imp. u* to perforate.

- ^sتَقَب hole, cavity.
^sثَقُل *imp. u* to be heavy.
II et IV caus.
^sثَقُل, ^sثَقُل weight.
^sكَدَل *imp. a, c. acc. pers.*
 to lose a child by death,
 (of a mother).
^sثَلَاث *fem.* ^sثَلَاثَة three.
^sثَلَاثَ عَشْرَة thirteen.
^sيَوْمُ الْثَلَاثَاءِ, ثَلَاثَاءُ
 Tuesday.
^sثُمَّ *adv.* then, thereupon.
^sثَمَانِ *fem.* ^sثَمَانِيَة eight.
^sثَمِين valuable.
^sثَنَى *X* to make an ex-
 ception.
^sثَنَاءُ praise, fame.
^sيَوْمُ الْاِثْنَيْنِ Monday.
^sاِثْنَا عَشَرَ twelve.
^sثَوْب garment.
- ^sثَار *med. و* to jump up,
 spring.
^sجُبَّة large garment.
^sجَبَد *imp. i* to draw, pull.
^sجَبَر *V* to behave proud-
 ly, overbearingly.
^sجَبَّار tyrannical.
^sجَبْرِيل Gabriel.
^sجَدَب *VIII* to draw, pull,
 seize.
^sجَرَّ *imp. u* to draw, draw
 along, drag.
^sالْجَرَّاح al-Jarrâh, name
 of a man.
^sجَرَى *imp. i* to run, flow.
IV caus.
^sجَوَارِيَة *pl.* جَوَارِ (§ 64 a)
 slave-girl, girl.
^sجِسْم body.
^sجَعَلَ place, put; impose
 (tribute); devote; begin
 (§ 74 c rem.).

جَفَّ *II* to dry (act.).

جَفَا *imp. u* to be thick, coarse.

جَدَّ *imp. i* to be mighty, exalted.

جِلْدٌ skin, hide.

جَلَسَ *imp. i* to sit down.

مَجَالِسُ *pl.* مَجْلِسٌ seat, session, council.

جُمَادَى month Jumādā.

جَمَعَ *imp. a* to bring together, assemble.

c. 2 بَيْنَ to summon both together to his presence.

VIII to be assembled, to come together.

جُمُعَةٌ union.

يَوْمُ الْجُمُعَةِ Friday.

جَمَاعَةٌ a number.

جَمَالٌ beauty, elegance.

جِنٌ *coll.* demons.

جِنِّي belonging to the demons, demon.

جَنَانٌ *pl.* جَنَّةٌ orchard.

جَانِبٌ side.

أَجْنِكَهَ *pl.* جَنَاحٌ wing.

جُنُودٌ *pl.* جُنْدٌ army, body of troops.

جُنْدُبٌ Jundub, name of a man.

جَهَّزَ *V c. l r.* to equip, prepare oneself for.

جَهْلٌ *imp. a* to be ignorant.

جَاهِلِيَّةٌ time of ignorance, paganism.

جَابَ *IV c. acc. pers. et إلى r.* to give answer, ear, to consent, to comply with anyone's desire.

جَوَابٌ answer.

- جَاد *med.* , to be generous.
 جَادٌ بِنَفْسِهِ to be at the last gasp.
 جُودٌ *inf.*, beneficence, generosity.
 جَاَزٌ *med.* و *c. acc.* to go past, pass, go by, exceed.
 جَوْفٌ inside, centre.
 جَوَاهِرٌ *pl.* جَوَاهِرُ jewel.
 جَاءَ *med.* يَ *c. acc.* to come.
 جَيْشٌ army.
 حَبَّ *IV* to love, wish.
 حُبٌ love.
 حَبْرَةٌ *pl.* حَبَرٌ sort of hand-some wide garment.
 حَبَسَ prison.
 حَبْلٌ rope.
 حَتَّى until; so that;
- in order that; sometimes to be translated finally.
 حَجَّ *imp. u* to make the pilgrimage to Mecca.
 حَجَّجَ *pl.* حَجَّجٌ a pilgrimage to Mecca.
 حُجَّةٌ good reason, ground of excuse.
 حِجَابٌ curtain.
 حَجَرٌ *coll.* stones.
 حَدٌّ *pl.* حُدُودٌ ordinance, legal punishment.
 حَدَّادٌ smith.
 حَدَّثَ *II c. acc. pers.* to inform, relate, tell.
 لَ to talk, to converse.
 حَدِيثٌ story, relation; oral tradition of the Prophet's sayings, tradition.

حَدَرَ *imp. u* to let flow
(run) down.

حَدَرَ *inf.*

حَرْب war, battle.

حَرْب Harb, name of
a man.

مِحْرَاب niche in mosque,

place of the imâm.

أَلْحَارِثُ al-Hārit, name of
a man.

حُرَّاس *pl.* حَارِس guard,
guardian.

حَرَكَ *II* to set in motion,
shake.

حَرَم *imp. u, c.* عَلَى to be
forbidden to, unlawful
for.

II to declare to be for-
bidden, unlawful.

حَرَم sacred territory,
district of the temple
at Mecca.

حُرْمَة *pl.* حُرُم woman.

أَلْحَرَم al-Muharram,
the first month.

حَزَّ *imp. u* to cut off.

حَزِن to be troubled, dis-
tressed, sad.

IV to trouble, dis-
tress.

حَسِبَ *imp. i, c. 2 acc.* to
think (it) to be.

حَسَن *IV* to do well, to
know well.

أَحْسَن *elat.* حَسَن
beautiful, good.

أَلْحَسَن al-Hasan;
proper name of a man;
son of the Caliph
'Alī.

حُسْن beauty.

حَشَم *coll.* followers, ser-
vants.

حَصَب *imp. i vel u* to
pelt with small stones.

حِصْنٌ *pl.* حُصُونٌ fortress,
castle.

حَصَى *coll.* small stones,
pebbles.

حَضِرَ *imp. u, c. acc. pers.*
to be there, to be
present.

IV to bring in, cause
to be present.

VIII c. acc. approach
anyone, of death.
pass. to be at the point
of death.

حَفَرَ *imp. i* to dig, dig out.
VIII idem.

حَاوِزٌ hoof.

حَفْصٌ Hafs, man's name.

حَفِظَ *imp. a* to take care
of, guard.

VIII c. ب. r. take heed.

حَقٌّ truth, certainty;
due, right, appointed
portion.

حَقَّةٌ box.

حَقٌّ *elat. c. ب.* حَقٌّ
r. worthy.

حَكَمَ *imp. u* to decide,
give judgment.

حِكْمَةٌ wisdom.

حَلَّ *imp. u* to loose, unbind.
IV to declare lawful,
to permit.

حُلَّةٌ *pl.* حُلَلٌ hand-
some wide garment.

حَلَفَ *imp. i* to swear.

حَلَقَ *II* to shave, shear.

حَمْدٌ praise, thanks.

حَمْدٌ مُحَمَّدٌ Muḥammed (the
praised one.)

حِمَارٌ ass.

حِمْيَرٌ Himyar, a people
in South Arabia.

خَطُّ الْحِمْيَرِيَّةِ writing
of the Himyarites.

حِصْ Homs (Emesa),

a town in Syria.

حَمَلَ *imp. i* to take up,
carry; to carry off; to
bear.

c. acc. pers. et عَلَى
r. to mount anyone on;
to incite to.

حَمَلَ *inf.* carrying.

حَمِيَّة care for the de-
fence of right, indigna-
tion.

حُنَيْن Hunain, valley and
hamlet near Mecca.

حَاجَ *med. و VIII c.* إِلَى to
want, have need of.

حَاجَةٌ want, need;
what one has need of.

• أَحْوَجَ *elat.* more in
need (of).

حَاطَ *med. و IV c.* بِ *r.*
to surround, com-
prehend, discover.

حَائِطُ *pl.* حِيطَانُ

wall.

حَالَ *med. و*, to pass by,
pass over one.

حَوْلَ year.

حَوْلَ *præp.* around.

أَحْوَلَ squinting.

حِينَ when; if.

يَكِيَّ *imp.* يَحْيَا *vel* حَيَّ
to live.

IV to bring to life.

حَيَاة life, life-time.

خَبَرَ *IV c. acc. pers. et* بِ
r. to tell, inform, re-
late.

VIII to prove, test.

أَخْبَارُ *pl.* خَبَرُ story,
account, report.

خَبَزَ *imp. i* to make bread,
bake.

خُبْزُ bread, loaf.

خَتَمَ *imp. i* to seal.

- ^sخَتَم *inf.* sealing up.
^sخَاتَم seal.
^sحَيْتَمَة Haitama, name of a woman.
^sخَد *imp. u* to dig, dig a pit.
^sخَد *inf.*
^sخَدِيعَة deception.
^sخَدَم *coll.* servants.
^sخَادِم servant.
^sخِدْمَة service, performance of service.
^sخَر *imp. i* to throw oneself down, fall.
^sخَرَج *imp. u* to go out, go forth; depart; to come, come out (into public).
^sخَرَج *IV* to draw out, drive out.
^sخَرَج *X* to bring out.
^sخَرَج tax on a slave, poll-tax of free non-Muslims.
^sخُرُوج *inf.* going forth; appearance (of a prophet).
^sخَزْ *nom. unit.* ^sخَزَّة small shell, jewel.
^sخَرَط *VIII* to draw the sword from the scabbard.
^sخَرَق to get a hole in it, be cleft.
^sخَازِن treasurer.
^sخَشِن rough, coarse.
^sخُضْرَة verdure, vegetables.
^sخَضَعَ *imp. a* bow down.
^sخَط writing, character.
^sخَطَب *imp. u, c. acc.* to woo, demand in marriage.
^sخَطْبَة *inf.* wooing.

- اَلْحَطَّابُ al-Hattāb,
 a man's name.
 خَفَّ *imp. i* to be light.
IV to be little bur-
 dened, encumbered.
 خَلَّ *IV c. پ rei* to omit,
 not to do one's duty in
 a thing.
 خَالِدٌ Hâlid, man's name.
 خَلَصَ *II* to let go free, to
 let in.
 خَلَعَ *inf.* removal, depo-
 sition.
 خَلَفَ *II* to leave behind.
VIII to be different,
 to differ in opinion,
 disagree.
X c. عَلَى to appoint
 as successor, as Caliph,
 over.
 خَلْفَ *præp.* behind.
 خِلَافَةً caliphate, reign
 of a Caliph.
- خَلَقَ *coll.* people.
 خُلُقٌ *pl.* أَخْلَاقٌ na-
 tural parts, mental at-
 tribute.
 خُلِقَ worn out.
 خَلَا *imp. u* to be empty,
 to be past (of time).
 خَبَرَ *VIII* to be, become
 fermented, mature.
 خَمْرٌ *fem.* fermented
 drink, wine.
 خَمْسَ five.
 خَمْسَةَ عَشَرَ fifteen.
 خَمْسُونَ fifty.
 خَمْسَ مِائَةٍ five hun-
 dred.
 خَنَثَ *II* to make effem-
 inate, soft.
 خَنْجَرَ dagger.
 خَاضَ *med. و* to wade
 through.

خَافَ (*pro* خَوْفَ) *imp. a*
to fear.

خَوْفٌ fear.

خَارَ *med. ي VIII* choose,
choose for oneself.

خَيْرٌ (*elat. id.*) good;
prosperity.

خَيْطٌ thread.

خَيْلٌ *coll.* horses.

خَيَالَةٌ phantom, spec-
tral vision.

تَخْيِيلٌ (*inf. II*) *pl.*

تَخَايِيلٌ phantasmago-
ria.

دَابَّةٌ *pl.* دَوَابٌّ beast of bur-
den; animal for riding.

دُبُرٌ, دُبْرٌ hinder-part.

دِيبَاجٌ brocade.

دَخَلَ *c. عَلَى* to come upon;
to go into.

IV to bring in, insert.

دَاخِلٌ inside, inter-
nal.

دُرٌّ *coll. (nom. unit. دُرَّةٌ)*
pearl.

دَرَأَ *imp. a* to push away,
avert (a punishment).

دَرَكَ *IV* to reach, over-
take, come upon.

دِرْهَمٌ drachma, piece of
silver.

دَرَى *imp. i* to know.
IV caus.

دَعَا *imp. u* to call, call in,
name.

c. إِلَى to invite, call
upon, request.

c. ب to call upon.

دَعَوَى claim.

دَفَعَ *imp. a* to push, repulse;
to give, deliver up.

دَفَعٌ *inf.* defending,
defence.

دَفَن *imp. i* to bury.

مَدْفَن ^s place of burial.

دَل *imp. u, c. عَلَى r.* to direct, lead, indicate, guide to.

دَلَّ بِحُجَّةٍ to prove by means of a valid argument.

دَلِيل ^c عَلَى guide, sign, indication.

دَنَا *imp. u, c. مِنْ* to approach, come near to.

دُنْيَا ^{fem. (masc. أَدْنَى)} world; earthly things; earthly possessions.

دُوْد ^{nom. unit.} دُوْدَة worm.

دَاوُد (§ 7 b not.) pronounce *dā'ūdu* David.

دَار *IV* to turn oneself, go round, to make to fly.

دَار ^{pl.} دَوْر dwell-

ling, house, mansion, court.

دَام *med. و* to continue.

III to continue, keep on doing anything.

دُون ^{præp.} on this side of, below; with the exception of, except.

مِنْ دُون idem.

دِيك ^s cock.

دِين ^s religion.

دِينَار ^s denarius, gold-piece.

ذَا *pron.* (§ 12 a) this.

مَاذَا (§ 14) what?

ذَبَح *imp. a* to cut in pieces.

ذُرِّيَّة ^s offspring.

ذِرَاع ^s ell, cubit.

ذَكَر *imp. u, c. acc.* to remember, think of; mention, name.

ذِكْرِي ^{fem.} memory.

- ذَلَّ *IV* to humble, abase,
 crush to earth.
 ذَلَّ *V* to submit, hum-
 ble oneself.
 ذَلِيلٌ *pl.* أَذِلَّةٌ hum-
 bled.
 ذَلِكَ *fem.* تِلْكَ *pron.* (§ 12c)
 that.
 ذَمَّرَ *V* to be excited, dis-
 contented with oneself.
 ذَنْبٌ tail.
 ذَهَبَ *imp.* *a* to go, go
 away; conduct oneself.
c. إِلَى *r.* to hold an
 opinion.
 ذَهَبٌ gold.
 مَذْهَبٌ course, man-
 ner of acting.
 ذُو *fem.* ذَاتٌ *pl.* أُولُو *c. gen.*
 (§ 65; 88b) owner of...,
 possessor of ..., *fem.*
 affair of ...
 رَأْسٌ head (also *fem.*).
- رَئِيسٌ leader.
 رَأَى *imp.* يَرَى to see, to
 look at, be of opinion,
 believe, judge to be
 right, *c. 2 acc.* find
 anything to be.
 رَأَى *c. 2 acc.* أَرَى show.
 رَأْيٌ insight, advice.
 رَبٌّ Lord, God.
 رَبِيعٌ Rabī', name of a
 month.
 أَرْبَعَةٌ *fem.* أَرْبَعٌ four.
 رَجَسَ dirty.
 رَجَعَ *imp.* *i* to turn back,
 return, to answer.
 رَجُلٌ *fem.* foot, leg.
 رَجَالٌ *pl.* رَجُلٌ man.
 رَحْلٌ camel's saddle.
 رَحِيلٌ travelling, jour-
 ney.
 رَحِمَ *imp.* *a, c. acc. pers.*

to have pity on
anyone.

رَحِيمٌ compassionate,
merciful.

الرَّحْمَنُ the Compas-
sionate, i. e. God.

رَحَى fem. mill.

رَحَى الْحَرْبِ the mill
of battle, the thick
of the fight.

رَخِيَ vel رَخُو to be lax.
IV to make lax, to
let hang down.

رُخَاءٌ gentle, soft (of
the wind).

رَدَّ imp. u to bring back.
VIII to turn back,
to turn.

قَبْلَ أَنْ يَرْتَدَّ إِلَيْكَ
طَرْفَكَ, before thou
hast given a single
look.

رَدَّ inf. giving back,
sending back, returning.

رَزَقَ imp. u to give, do-
nate, grant, endow.

رَزَقٌ sustenance, food.

رَسَلَ IV to send.

رَسُولٌ pl. رُسُلٌ messenger.

رَضَعَ II to set (of jewels).

رَضِيَ imp. a, c. acc. to be
content, to acquiesce,
to be pleased at.

رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُ may
God be pleased with
him.

مَرْضَاةٌ inf. satisfac-
tion, pleasure.

رَعَدَ VIII to tremble,
quake.

رَعَى imp. a guard, tend.

رَاعٍ herdsman, pastor.

رَعِيَّةٌ coll. subjects,
people.

رَغِبَ *imp. a* to desire eagerly; *c.* عَنِ to cease desiring, to abstain from.

رَفَعَ *imp. a* to raise up, raise (voice); to take up, lift, take away, put away, remove.

VIII to rise, rise up, soar aloft; to go up, to be high, valuable; to be advanced (of a day).

رَقَدَ *imp. u* to sleep.

رَقَدَةً sleep.

رَقَعَ II mend, patch.

رُكَيَّة Rukayya, woman's n.

رَكَبَ *imp. a, c. acc.* to mount a horse, ride.

رَكَابَ *coll.* beast for riding.

رَكَضَ *imp. u* to gallop.

رُكْعَةً single act of bowing in prayer. (For every prayer there are appointed a certain fixed number of bowings.)

رُكْوَةً water-vessel made of leather.

رُكْيَا *pl.* رُكْيَا cistern containing water.

رَمَى *imp. i, c.* ر. to throw, throw at, pelt.

رَمَحَ V to reel, stagger.

رَهَجَ cloud of dust.

رَاتَ *med.* و. to dung.

رِيحَ (رَوْحَ) *fem., pl.*

رِيَّاحَ wind.

رَادَ *med., IVc. acc.* to wish, want, intend.

رَاغَ *imp. u* to turn away,

- to turn this way and that.
- رَوَى *imp. i* to transmit, relate (of a tradition).
- رَوَى *imp. a* to quench the thirst.
- رَوَى quenching the thirst (of water).
- رَوَايَةً tradition, report.
- زُبُور Holy writ, orig. the Book of Psalms.
- زُجَاج glass, piece of glass.
- زُجَاجَةٌ id. *nom. un.*
- زَجَرَ *imp. u* to chide, reprove, reprimand, rebuke.
- زَحَام crowd, crush.
- زَعْفَرَان saffron.
- زُعَمَاء *pl.* spokesman, chieftain.
- زَفَّ *imp. u* to conduct a bride to the house of her husband.
- زَمَعَ *IV c.* عَلَى to determine, resolve upon doing a thing.
- زَمَنَ time, reign.
- زَهَدَ *imp. a* to abstain, shun, abhor. *II caus.*
- زُهْدٌ temperance, abstinence.
- زَاهِدٌ *elat.* أَزْهَدُ temperate, dispassionate.
- زَهَقَ *imp. a* to come to nought.
- زَهُقَ coming to nought.
- زَهَا *imp. u* to shoot up, thrive well, attain full growth.
- الزُّبَعَةُ al-Zaubā'a, name of a demon.

زَاج *II c. 2 acc. vel c. acc.*
et مِن to marry (act.);

c. acc. to marry (neut.)

V c. acc. refl.

زَوْجَةٌ *wife.*

زَار *med. و imp. u to visit.*

زَالَ *med. و imp. a (c. acc.)*
to cease (being any-
thing; esp. negatively).

زَوَالٌ *inf. mid-day,*
noon or afternoon.

زَوَى *V تَزَيَّ et تَزَيَّ (ex*
تَزَوَّى) to assume the
guise of, to dress one-
self.

زَيٌّ *appearance, dress.*

زَوَايَا *pl. زَاوِيَةٌ cor-*
ner.

زَادَ *med. و imp. i, c. 2 acc.*
to give more, add to.

زَادَ *inf. increase.*

زَانَ *med. و II to make a*
thing seem good to
anyone.

زَا part. § 70 d; 74 a.

زَاكٌ *teak.*

زَائِرٌ, سَائِرٌ *remaining, all.*

سَأَلَ *imp. a, c. 2 acc. to ask*
anyone for.

c. acc. pers. et عَنْ
to ask after.

سُؤَالٌ *inf. question.*

سَبَّ *imp. u to revile.*

سَبَبٌ *cause, reason.*

سَبَاٌ *Sheba, town and dis-*
trict in South Arabia.

سَبْعَةٌ *fem. سَبْعٌ seven.*

سَبَاعٌ *pl. سَبْعٌ beast*
of prey.

سَبِيلٌ *masc. vel fem. way,*
right way.

سِتّ fem. سِتَّة six.

سِتُون sixty.

سَتَر imp. u, vel i to hide.

سَجَدَ imp. u, c. ل, to prostrate oneself, προσ-
χυεῖν.

سُجُود inf. prostration, bowing down.

مَسْجِدُ mosque.

سَجَّان gaoler.

سِحْر enchantment.

سَكْر the time before daybreak.

سَخَّر II to make subservient, subdue.

سَدَ imp. u to stop up, obstruct.

سَرَّ imp. u, c. acc. to rejoice, give pleasure to.

سِرّ pl. أَسْرَار secret.

سُرَّة navel.

سَرِير throne.

سَرْج saddle.

سَرَعَ IV to hurry, be in a hurry

أَسْرَعَ, سَرِيع elat. quick, swift.

سَعْد Sa'd, man's name.

سَاعِد pl. سَوَاعِد forearm.

سَعِيد Sa'id, name of man.

أَلْمَسْعُودِي al-Mas'ūdī, name of a man. Author of various historical works, † 345 or 346 A. Hej. (956 or 957 A. D.).

سَفَر IV to remove something which is in front of another thing.

أَسْفَلَ elat. سَافِل low.

سُفْيَانُ Sufyân, name
of a man.

سَقَى *imp. i, c. 2 acc.* to
give to drink.

IV c. 2 acc. id., to
serve wine to.

سَكِرَ *imp. a* to be, become
drunk.

سَكَرَانُ drunk.

سَكَنَ *imp. u* to dwell, in-
habit.

مِسْكِينٌ poor.

سَلْحِينُ name of a castle
in South Arabia.

سَلَطَ *II* to appoint as
ruler.

سُلْطَانٌ might, rule,
power; plausible ex-
cuse, plea.

سَلَكَ *imp. u* to enter, trav-
el along in; *c. acc. obj.*
et في loci vel c. acc. obj.
et ب instr. to make to

go in or through, in-
sert, pierce through.

سَلَّمَ *II* to grant safety,
prosperity.

IV c. لِلَّهِ to declare
oneself resigned to God;
to become a Muslim.

سَلَامٌ immunity, wel-
fare, safety.

سَلْمَانُ Salmân, name
of a man.

سُلَيْمَانُ Solomon.

إِسْلَامٌ (*inf. IV*) Islām.

سَمَّ *imp. u* to put poison
in, to poison.

سَمٌ poison.

سَبَاحَةٌ *inf.* munificence.

سَمِعَ *imp. a* to hear.

سَمَكٌ *coll.* fish.

سَبَا *II c. 2 acc. vel c. acc.*
et ب to call, name.

- سَمَاء^s heaven.
 اِسْم^s name.
 سِن^s tooth, age.
 سُنَّة^s, pl. سُنَن^s ordinance, institution, tradition.
 سَنَد^s *IV* to support; to authenticate a tradition of Muḥammed by adducing an unbroken series of the persons who have handed it down.
 مُسَنَّد^s propped up, name of the Himyaritic writing.
 سَنَة^s pl. nom. سِنُون^s (§ 53 b; * 65 m) year.
 سُهَيْل^s Suhail, the star Canopus.
 سَاء^s *med.* و to be evil. *IV* to make evil.
- سُوء^s evil, wickedness, injury.
 سَوْدَاء^s fem. اَسْوَد^s black, dark-coloured.
 اَسَاوِدَة^s pl. house-utensils.
 سَيِّد^s lord, master.
 اَسَاوِر^s pl. سِوَار^s bracelet.
 سَوْط^s whip.
 سَاعَة^s hour, while.
 اَلْسَاعَة^s now, at once.
 سَاق^s fem. calf of leg.
 اَسْوَاق^s pl. سُوق^s market, street.
 سَوِي^s *VIII* to be uniform, equal.
 سَار^s *med.* ي *imp.* i to travel, journey, go on.
 سَيْرَة^s course of life, conduct.
 مَسِير^s *inf.* travelling, journey.

- ^sمَسِيرَة space traversed
 in journeying.
^sسَيْف sword.
^sشَاة sheep.
^sشَام Syria.
^sشبه *II* to compare.
 IV to resemble.
 V *c.* ب to seek to
 resemble, to imi-
 tate.
^sشَجَر *nom. unit.* ^sشَجَرَة
 tree, shrub.
 شَخَصَ *imp. a* to gaze
 fixedly at, to go forth,
 travel.
 شَدَ *imp. u* to tie, bind
 fast.
 أَشَدَّ *elat.* شَدِيدٌ
 strong; vehement, ener-
 getic; powerful.
 شَرَّ (*elat. id.*) bad.
 شَرَبَ *imp. a* to drink.
 شُرِبَ *inf.* drinking.
- ^sشَرَاب wine, strong
 drink.
 شَرَفَ *IV* to be high, pro-
 minent.
 أَشْرَفَ *pl.* شَرِيفٌ high-
 born, noble, eminent.
 شَرَى *VIII* to buy, pur-
 chase for (مِنْ).
 شُعْبَة Shu'ba, man's name.
^sشَعْر *nom. unit.* ^sشَعْرَة hair.
 شَعِيرٌ barley.
 أَشْعَرَ *fem.* شَعْرَاءٌ hairy,
 having much hair.
 شَغَلَ *VIII c.* ب to occu-
 py oneself, be occupied
 with.
 شَكَرَ *imp. u* to thank, to
 be thankful.
 شَكَا *imp. u, c.* إِلَى *et acc.*
 to complain to one per-
 son of another.
 شَمْسٌ *fem.* sun.

شَدَّ VIII wrap oneself in.

c. عَلَى to wrap one's garments over.

شَمْلَةٌ kind of shirt, large wrapper.

شِمَالٌ left.

شَرٌّ shame, disgrace.

شَرْفٌ pl. شُرُوفٌ ear-ring.

شَهِدَ imp. a to give testimony, to testify;

c. عَلَى to convince oneself as to;

c. acc. pers. to be with anyone.

III c. acc. to see, be an eye-witness.

شَهِدٌ pl. شُهُودٌ witness.

شَهَادَةٌ testimony.

شَهْرٌ pl. أَشْهُرٌ month.

شَارَ med. و IV c. عَلَى p. to give anyone good advice.

شَازَةٌ form, appearance.

شَاءَ med. ي imp. a to will, wish.

شَيْءٌ thing, something.

شَادَ med. ي II to plaster over, to build high.

شَيْطَانٌ pl. شَيَاطِينُ devil, Satan.

شَاعَ med. ي to spread, become known.

شَيْئَةٌ pl. شَيْئٌ nature, innate disposition, habit.

صَبَّ imp. u to pour, pour out.

صَبٌّ inf. pouring.

صَبَحَ IV to rise early; to enter upon the time of the early morning.

صُبْحٌ daybreak.

صَبَاحٌ early morning.

مُصَبَّغَةٌ dyed garment.

صَحِيح right, true.

صَحِب to be a companion.

X take as companion.

صَاحِب pl. أَصْحَاب adherent; friend, companion; lord; man, owner of..(cfr. § 88b).

صَاحِبُ مَكْس tax-gatherer.

أَصْحَابُ الْأَحْدِيث the relaters of traditions.

صَحِيفَةٌ leaf.

صَحْن court, court-yard.

صَخْر big stone.

صَخْر Sahr, name of a man.

صَدَّ imp. u to turn away from, alienate.

صَدْر pl. صُدُور breast, the front part, place of honour.

دَفَعَ فِي صَدْرِهِ to reject the good advice of a person.

صَدَق imp. u to speak the truth.

صِدْق inf. truth, veracity.

صَرَّ imp. u to tie up, bind, collect.

صُرَّة pl. صُرَر purse.

صَرَح state-room.

صَرَخ imp. u to call out, call loudly.

صَرَف imp. i to turn away, remove, depose.

صَرَف inf.

VII c. عَنْ pers. to go away from, to leave.

صِرْوَاه Sirwāh, name of a castle in South Arabia.

صَعِدَ *imp. a, c. acc.* to
go up, ascend.

صَغُرَ *imp. u,* to be small,
covered with ignominy.

صَغِيرٌ *elat.* أَصْغَرُ small,
young.

صَفَّ *VII* to stand, place
themselves in a row.

صَفٌّ *pl.* صُفُوفٌ row.

أَصْفَرُ yellow.

صَفُورِيَّةٌ Sepphoris,
town in Galilee.

مُصْطَفًى proper name of
a man (chosen, elect).

صَلَبَ *imp. i* to crucify,
to have crucified.

صَلَحَ *imp. u* to be good,
pious.

IV c. acc. pers. to
make to thrive.

c. مِن to put in bet-
ter order, condition.

صَلَا *II* to pray.

صَلَاةٌ, صَلَوةٌ prayer.

صَلَعٌ § 10.

صَنَعَ *imp. a* to make, fab-
ricate, construct.

صَنْعَاءُ San'ā, large
town in Yemen.

مَصْنَعَةٌ *pl.* مَصَانِعُ castle.

صَوْتٌ voice.

صُورَةٌ figure, form.

صُوفٌ wool.

صَاحَ *med.* صَاحَ to cry,
shout, scold.

صَيَّاحٌ *inf.* crying,
scolding.

صَارَ *med.* صَارَ *c. acc.* to be-
come.

II to make to become;
to make to be, to have
brought.

صَيَّاقِلَةٌ *pl.* صَيَّاقِلٌ sword-
cutler, sword-polisher.

ضَجَعَ *VIII* to lie on one's
side.

- ضَرَبَ *imp. i* to beat, strike off, sprinkle.
 ضَرَبَ بِهِ الْأَرْضَ he threw him to the ground
 ضَرَبَ sort, kind.
 ضَرْبَةً single act of striking.
- ضَمَّ *imp. u* to conjoin with, associate with.
- ضَاعَ *med. ي* to perish, get lost.
- ضَيْعَةٌ *pl.* ضِيَاع estate, country-place.
- طَاَطَأَ to lower.
- طَبْرِيَّةٌ Tiberias.
- طَبَعَ *imp. u, c. acc. obj. et ب* mater. to press upon.
- طَحَنَ *imp. a* to grind.
- طَرَفَ look, glance.
- طَرْفَ portion, end.
- مُطَرَفٌ nickname of a man (the elegant one).
- طَرِيقَةٌ way, manner of acting.
- طَعَامٌ food, dish, meal.
- مَطْعَمٌ eating, food.
- طَعَنَ *imp. u vel a* to smite, to give anyone a blow or thrust.
- طَعْنَةٌ blow, thrust.
- طَلَبَ *imp. u* to seek.
- طَلَبَ مِنْ pers. to ask anyone for, demand.
- أَبُو طَالِبٍ Abū Tālib, name of a man.
- طَلَعَ *imp. u* to rise (of the sun).
- VIII c. عَلَى to look at, see.
- طَلَّقَ VII to go away, depart.
- طَلَّقَ open, pleasant.
- طَلَّقَ divorce from a wife.

طَبَعَ *imp. a, c. في rei* to covet, strive after, desire eagerly.

مَطْهَرَةٌ ^s water-vessel made of leather (for ablutions).

طَوْرٌ ^s time, state, measure, limit.

طَاعَ *med. و* to obey, to be complaisant.

IV id.

طَاعَةٌ ^s obedience, submissiveness.

طَوَقَ ^s *pl. أَطْرَاقٌ* neck-lace.

طَاقَةٌ ^s power, ability to do anything.

طَالَ *med. و IV* to make long, to remain a long time at.

طُولٌ ^s length, extent in point of length.

طَوَى *imp. i* to fold, conceal.

طَارَ *med. ي* to fly.

طَيْرٌ ^s *pl. طُيُورٌ* bird (singular also coll.).

ظَلَّ *IV* to shade.

ظَلَمَ *imp. i* to treat unjustly, injure.

ظَهَرَ *imp. a* to appear, to come to light.

IV to make to appear.

ظَهْرٌ ^s back, upper portion.

عَبَدَ *imp. u* to pray to, worship, adore.

عَبْدٌ ^s slave, servant.

عَبْدُ اللَّهِ 'Abdallāh, name of a man (worshipper of Allah).

عِبَادَةٌ ^s worship.

عُبَيْدَةُ 'Ubaida, name of a man.

الْعَبَّاسُ al-'Abbās, name
of a man.

عَبَاءٌ mantle.

عِيقٌ nobility, rank.

عَتِيقٌ freed, noble, old.

عُثْمَانُ 'Uṭmān, name of
a man.

عَجِبَ *imp. a, c.* مِنْ to be
astonished at.

عَجِيبٌ wonderful, as-
tonishing.

عَجِيبَةٌ *pl.* عَجَائِبُ won-
derful thing, marvel.

عَجَمٌ *coll.* barbarians, esp.
Persians.

عَكَنَ *imp. i* to knead.

عَكِينٌ dough.

عَدَ *X c. l* to make one-
self ready, to prepare
oneself.

عَدَّةٌ number.

عَدَا *V c. acc.* to go be-
yond, exceed.

عَدُوٌّ *pl.* أَعْدَاءُ enemy.

عَذَبَ *II* to punish, torture.

عَذَابٌ punishment,
torture.

عَذَلُ *imp. u vel i* to blame.

عَرَبٌ *coll.* Arabs.

أَعْرَابِيٌّ Bedouin.

عَرْشٌ throne, a throne with
a canopy over it.

عَرَضَ *imp. i, c. l pers.* to
come across, occur,
happen.

c. عَلَى to offer to any-
one, propose.

V to advance towards.

عَرْضٌ breadth, extent
as to breadth.

عَزْرٌ cypresses.

عَرَفَ *imp. i* to perceive,
know.

^sعُرْف *pl.* ^sأَعْرَاف comb
on the head of a bird.

^sعَرِيف chief, prince.

^sعَرَق sweat, perspiration.

^sعَزَّ *imp. i* to be strong,
mighty.

^sالْعَزَّى al-'Uzzā, name
of a goddess of the
pre-islamitic Arabs,
esp. of the Koreishites.

^sعَبْدُ الْعَزَّى 'Abdul-
'Uzzā, a man's name.

^sعَزَلَ *inf.* deposition, re-
moval.

^sعَزَمَ *imp. i, c.* على to
decide, to resolve upon
anything.

^sعَسْكَر army.

^sمُعَسْكَر camp.

^sعَشْرَ *fem.* ^sعَشْرَة ten.

^sعِشْرُونَ twenty.

^sعَشِيرَة tribe, kins-
folk.

^sعَاشُورَاء 'Ashūra, fes-
tival on the tenth
day of the month
Muḥarram; orig. the
Jewish feast of atone-
ment.

^sمَعْشَر assembly, to-
tality.

^sعَصْر afternoon, about
two hours before sun-
set; generation, age.

^sعَصَا stick, staff.

^sعَصَى *imp. i, c. acc.* to re-
bel against, disobey.

^sأَبُو الْعَاصِ Abu-l-'Āṣi
a man's name.

^sعَطِشَ *imp. a* to be, be-
come thirsty.

^sعَطا *IV c. 2 acc.* to give.

^sعَظِيم *elat.* ^sأَعْظَم great,
mighty, glorious.

- ^sعَفِير *vel* ^sعَفِير (?) proper name of a bird.
^sعَفْرِيت evil, clever demon.
^sعَفَّان 'Affān, man's name.
^sعَفَا *imp. u, c.* ^sعَنْ *pers.* to forgive anyone.
^sعَقَب offspring.
^sعَقَبَة mountain-road, pass.
^sعُقْبَة 'Ukba, a man's name.
^sعُقَاب a kind of eagle, sea-eagle.
^sعَقَلَ *imp. i vel* ^sعَقِلَ *imp. a* to be of sound mind, sensible.
^sعَقْل understanding; reason, intelligence.
^sعَقِيل 'Akīl, a man's name.
^sعَكَا Acco, St. Jean d'Acre.
- ^sعَلَج *III* to treat, manage, labour at, exercise skill upon.
^sعَلَج big, strong heathen.
^sعَلَف *pl.* ^sعُلُوفَة fodder.
^sعَلِم *imp. a* to perceive, know.
c. ^sب be cognizant of.
^sعِلْم knowledge; science.
^sعَلَم sign; something whereby a thing can be recognized.
^sعَالِم *pl.* ^sعُلَمَاء, *elat.*
^sأَعْلَم learned man.
^sعَالَم creature.
^sعَلَا *imp. u* to be high. *c.* ^sعَلَى to behave proudly, insolently to.
^sعَلَاهُ بِالسَّوْطِ he struck him with the whip.

II to be exalted, esp. of God.

عَلَى *præp.* (§ 71 b) over, on, upon, on the basis, ground of, against.

ب. عَلَى بِه *v.*

هِيَ عَلَى ثَلَاثَةِ أَيَّامٍ she is three days' journey distant.

عَلِيّ 'Alī, the fourth Caliph.

أَعْلَى *elat.* عَالٍ loud.

عَمَّ *imp. u* to be, become universal, comprehensive.

عَمَدَ *imp. i, c.* إِلَى to betake oneself to, have recourse to.

عُمَرُ 'Omar.

عَامِرُ 'Amir, man's name.

عَمْرُو (§ 65 n) pron. 'Amrun, a man's name.

عُمُقُ depth, distance to the bottom.

عَمِلَ *imp. a* to make, do, construct.

X to employ anyone as . . .

عَمَلٌ *pl.* أَعْمَالٌ work, deed, action, handicraft; territory, province.

عَامِلٌ *pl.* عُمَّالٌ administrator, vice-roy.

عَمِيَ *imp. a* to be, become blind.

عَنْ *præp.* from, away from; about, concerning, according to.

عَنْبَرٌ ambergris. [by, in.

عِنْدَ *præp.* at, near, with,

عِنْدَ ذَلِكَ under these circumstances.

مِنْ عِنْدِ from, French de chez.

عُنُقٌ *pl.* عُنُقٌ neck.
 Kk

عاج *med.* و IX to be crooked.

عَادَ *imp. a, c.* عَلَى to return, to repeat, do again.

عُودٌ aloes-wood.

عَادَةٌ habit, costum, wont, ordinary manner of acting.

عَادَ *med.* و to seek refuge.

X to ask for protection; to say: اَعُوذُ بِاللّٰهِ

(Sura 114) „I seek protection by God!”

عَانَ *med.* و X to help oneself.

مُعَاوِيَةُ Mu'āwiya, the first Omayyad Caliph. (661—79).

عَارٌ disgrace.

عَائِشَةُ 'A'īša, woman's n.

عَيْنٌ *fem., pl.* عَيْنٌ eye.

pl. عَيْنٌ well, spring.

غَدَا *V* to breakfast, take an early meal.

غُرَّةٌ first, beginning (of a month).

غَرَبَ *imp. u* to set, (of the sun).

غَزَا *ult.* و to make a raid, warlike expedition.

غَسَلَ *imp. i* to wash.

غَسَلَ *inf.* ablution.

غَاشِيَةٌ *pl.* غَوَاشٍ saddle-cover.

غَضَّ to be choked up.

غَضٌّ fresh.

غَضِبَ *imp. a* to be, become angry.

غَضَبٌ anger, wrath.

غَضِبَ angry.

غَطَاءٌ cover, lid.

غَلَاةٌ *pl.* غَلَائِلُ under-
garment.

غَالِبٌ *elat.* أَغْلَبُ conquer-
ing, predominant.

غَلَسٌ darkness of night,
at the commencement
of dawn. [ness.

غِلْظَةٌ roughness, harsh-
غَلَقَ *II et IV* to bolt,
lock,

غُلَامٌ *pl.* غُلَمَانٌ youth,
page, slave.

غَنَمٌ *coll.* sheep.

غَنِيَ *imp. a, c.* عَنْ to be
rich, not to have need
of.

II to sing.

IV to make rich.

• مُغَنٍّ singer.

غَابَ *med.* غَى to be absent.

غارَ *med.* غَى *II, c.* مِنْ to
alter.

غَيْرٌ (§ 88 b with gen.)
other than, beside, ex-
cept; not.

غَيْرٌ مِنْ without.

غَيْرَةٌ indignation.

الْمُغِيرَةُ al-Mugīra, a
man's name.

غِيلَةً in an artful,
deceitful manner, un-
awares.

فَ *conj.* (§ 71 e; 104) then,
and, so.

فَتَحَ *imp. a* to open.

c. عَلَى to open to
anyone = to grant him
the victory over ...

مَفَاتِيحُ *pl.* مِفْتَاحُ
key.

فَتَا *IV c. acc. pers. et في r.*
to explain.

فُتُوَةٌ youthful behav-
iour, levity.

فَجَرَ *imp. u* to transgress,
commit disgraceful
deeds.

فَخَّرَ *III* to give oneself airs
toward anyone, boast.

فَرَّ *imp. i* to flee.

فَرَحَ *imp. a, c.* بَ r. to
rejoice, be glad.

فَرَسٌ horse, especially of
pure breed.

فِرَاسَةٌ cleverness, in-
sight. [ian.

فَارِسِي Persian, a Pers-

فَرَسَخٌ *pl.* فَرَايِخُ para-
sang, ab. four miles.

فَرَّغَ *imp. u, c.* مِنْ to be emp-
ty, to get through with.

فَرَّقَ *imp. u, c.* بَيْنَ to sepa-
rate, distinguish.

V to be dispersed.

VIII to be divided,
split.

فِرْقَةٌ portion, party.

فَارُوقٌ maker of dis-
tinctions (Omar).

فَزَعَ *imp. a* to be fright-
ened, afraid, to fear.

فَسَادٌ evil deed.

فَسَقَ *imp. u* to commit
unlawful acts.

فِسْقٌ *inf.* evil, im-
moral conduct, trans-
gression.

فَشَا *IV* to reveal, divulge,
spread.

فِضَّةٌ silver.

فَضَحَ *imp. a, c.* مِنْ to put
to shame before anyone.

فَضَلَ *VIII c.* بَ r. to wrap a
garment around oneself.

فَضْلٌ liberality.

فَعَلَ *imp. a* to do.

أَفْعَالٌ *pl.* فَعِلٌ deed,

action, manner of acting.

فَقَدَّ *V* to miss, to ask, seek after anyone.

فَكَ VII *c.* مِنْ to free oneself of, get rid of.

فَاكِهَةٌ *pl.* فَوَاكِهُ tree-fruit.

فَلَّ *imp. u* to make dull, blunt, to defeat, confound (?).

فُلَانٌ such and such a one.

فَهِمَ *I* to understand; to endeavour to understand, comprehend.

فَوْرَةً, فَوْرًا *at once.*

فُوهُ (§ 65 o) mouth.

فِي *præp.* in, at, with, among; in comparison with.

قَبْرٌ grave.

قَبِلَ *imp. a* to accept.

IV to come towards, to come, come along; to begin.

X to be opposite to.

قَبْلَ *præp.* before, ere.

قَبْلُ opposing, power of resistance.

قَبَلِ *præp.* in presence of.

قَبُولٌ *inf. I* acceptance.

قَبَائِىْ *pl.* أَقْبِيَّةٌ man's coat, wide garment.

قَتَلَ *imp. u* to kill.

III *c. acc.*, to combat anyone, to fight.

قَتْلٌ *inf.* killing, execution.

قَتِيلٌ killed.

قَحَاةٌ a man's name.

قَدْ § 73 *e part.*

قَدَرَ *imp. i, c.* عَلَى *r.* to be able; to have power to do a thing.

II to apportion to anyone a fixed measure, esp. of talents.

IVc. عَلَى to make more powerful than...

قُدْرَةٌ might, omnipotence.

مِقْدَارٌ measure, due.

مَقْدِسٌ sanctuary.

بَيْتُ الْمَقْدِسِ (or

الْبَيْتُ = بَيْتُ الْمَقْدِسِ

الْمَقْدِسُ, the holy house) sanctuary, temple in Jerusalem, Jerusalem.

قَدِمَ *imp. a, c.* عَلَى to advance, arrive, come.

V to precede, to advance towards.

قَدَمٌ foot.

قَدِيمٌ *pl.* قَدَمَاءُ old, ancient, former.

قَرَّرَ *IV* to establish, confirm.

c. ر. بِ to confess.

X to stand, be established.

قَارُورَةٌ *pl.* قَوَارِيرُ glass vessel.

قَرَأَ *imp. a* to read, be able to read.

قَرُبَ *imp. u, c.* مِنْ to be near, approach.

II (denominative) to offer (a sacrifice).

قَرْبَةٌ water-skin (usually made out of a goat's skin).

قَرَابِينَ *pl.* قُرْبَانٌ sacrifice.

قَرِيبٌ *c.* مِنْ near.

قَرَابَةٌ relations.

قُرَيْشُ the tribe of Kuraish, Kuraishites.

قُرْطٌ *pl.* أَقْرَاطُ ear-ring.

قَرْيَةٌ *pl.* قَرَى village.

قسم *IV* to swear.

قِصَّةٌ *pl.* قِصَصٌ story, tale.

قَصَّابٌ butcher, executioner.

قَصَدَ *imp. i, c. acc.* to make for, go towards.

قَصَرَ to be short.

VI to make oneself short, contract oneself.

تَقَاصَرَتْ نَفْسُهُ to seem mean to oneself.

قَصْرٌ *pl.* قُصُورٌ palace, castle, fortress.

قَصْعَةٌ plate, dish.

قَضَّ *VII* to drop down, dart down (of a bird).

قَضَى *imp. i* to judge, to

sit in judgment; to execute.

VII to be finished, be at an end.

قَاضٍ judge.

قَطَعَ *imp. a* to cut through; to decide, determine; to pass, pass through.

قَعَدَ *imp. u* to seat oneself, to sit.

c. l lie in wait for.

قَنَّا *VIII* to acquire, gain, buy.

قَادَ *med. و* to lead.

قَائِدٌ leader.

قَالَ *med. و* to say, tell; often = to ask.

c. l to call, name.

قَوْلٌ speech.

قَامَ *med. و* to stand up, to get up, to rise.

IV to establish, maintain; to accomplish,

execute; to place one-self, stand, stay, remain.

قوم ^{qom} coll. people, relations.

قيمة ^{qima} value.

قيام ^{qiam} being awake; to perform one's devotions.

مقام ^{maqam} place.

قبطر ^{qubtur} to tie up, bind (a water-skin); to be assembled.

قوى ^{qawi} to be strong.

II to make strong.

قوى ^{qawi} (c. على) strong, powerful.

قآء ^{qaa} med. ي V to vomit.

قيئ ^{qai} chieftain, king (in Yemen).

ك (§ 70; 94 b prop. subst.) similitude, measure, like, as.

كَانَ ^{kan} (it is) as if...

كَبَّرَ ^{kabar} V to magnify one-self, be proud.

كَبِيرٌ ^{kabir} elat. أَكْبَرُ ^{akbar} great, old.

كَتَبَ ^{kataba} imp. u to write, be able to write.

كَتَبَ مَعَهُمْ كِتَابًا ^{kataba ma'ahum kitaba} he wrote a letter and sent it by them.

كِتَابٌ ^{kitab} document, letter, book.

كَتِفٌ, كَتِفٌ ^{kataf} shoulder.

كَثُرَ ^{kathara} to be much, abundant.

III to desire much of anything, to seek to surpass anyone.

أَكْثَرُ ^{akthar} elat. كَثِيرٌ ^{kathir} much (often used as a substantive in apposition).

كَذًا ^{kadha} so, thus.

كَذَبَ ^{kadaba} imp. i to lie, tell lies.

كُرْدُوس ^s *coll.* division,
squadron.

كُرَيْز ^s Kuraiz, man's name.

كُرْسِي ^s seat, chair,
throne.

كَرَّمَ ^s *IV c. acc. pers. et* ب
r. to honour, present
with.

كَرَم ^s *inf.* liberality,
generosity.

كَرِيم ^s noble.

كَرِهَ ^s *imp. a* not to like,
to rather not do a
thing.

كَشَفَ ^s *imp. i, c.* عَنْ to
uncover, lay bare.

VII to be uncovered,
taken away.

كَعْب ^s Ka'b, name of a man.

كُفُو ^s equal, of equal birth,
rank.

كَفَرَ ^s *imp. u* to be ungrateful,
to deny.

كُفْر ^s unbelief.

كَفَى ^s *imp. i, c. acc. pers. et*
r. to do a thing in
someone's place.

كُلَّ ^s (*v. § 85 b*) totality,
before a determ. noun,
all; bef. indet. every.

مُكَلَّل ^s ornamented, set.

كَلْدَةُ ^s Kalada, name of
a man.

كِلْس ^s lime.

دُوَالْكَالَا ^s Dū-lkalā, n. of
a South Arabian prince.

كَلَّمَ ^s *II c. acc. pers.* to
talk with anyone.

V to speak, talk.

كَلَام ^s speech, talk.

كَمَا (ما + ك) as, like as.

كَمَال ^s perfection, com-
pleteness.

كُنَاسَة ^s dust-heap; name of
a part of Kufa.

كُنْ quantity.

كُنَا *imp. u* to give a name of honour to, see the foll. line.

كُنْيَا name of honour, title, formed of the name of a son, with prefixed "father" or "mother".

كُوَّة window.

أَلْكُوفَةُ al-Kūfa, town near the site of ancient Babylon.

كَانَ *med. و* (§ 81; 97) to exist, be.

c. acc. to be something.

The perfect has often the force of the present.

كَانَ *c. ل* circumlocution for "to have".

كَيْفَ how?

لَ (§ 70 g; 95 not.) *part.* of asseveration.

لِ *præp.* (§ 70 h; 87) for; indicates the dative; because of, on account of (end, motive); in stating dates, e. g. لَيْلَةَ بَقِيَّتِ مِنْ رَجَبٍ one night remaining of (the month) Rag'ab.

لِ *conj. c. subj.* (§ 75) that, in order that.

لِأَنَّ (§ 95) because.

لَا not, with the jussive prohibitive § 76 b; with the perfect § 73 d.

بِلَا *præp. c. g.* without.

مَلَايِكَةٌ *pl.* مَلَايِكَةٌ angel.

لَوْلُو Lu'lu'a, a man's name (pearl).

لَيْثَ *imp. a* to remain, tarry.

لَبَسَ *imp. a, c. acc. to*

put on (of dress).

IV c. 2 acc. to clothe.

لِبْسٌ *clothing, dress.*

لِبَاسٌ *id.*

مَلْبَسٌ *id.*

لَبْنَةٌ *coll., nom. unit.* لَبْنٌ *bricks.*

لُجَّةٌ *sea, lake.*

أَلْكُورُ *village in Palestine, Legio.*

لِسَانٌ *tongue.*

لَصِقَ *VIII c. ب to be attached to, cleave to.*

لَطِيفٌ *kind.*

لَفَّتَ *VIII to turn round.*

لَقِبَ *II c. acc. pers. et ب to give a nickname, surname to.*

لَقَبٌ *nickname.*

لَقِيَ *imp. a to meet.*

IV c. acc. et آل to throw, hand over to.

V to come forth to meet, to meet.

X to throw oneself down, to lie.

لَمْ (§ 76 c) *not.*

لَمَّا *conj after, when.*

لَوْ *part. if, introduces an improbable condition. [blame.*

لَامَ *med. و to reproach,*

لَانَ *med. و II to colour, variegate.*

لَوْنٌ *pl. ألْوَانٌ colour, kind, species.*

لَيْسَ (§ 42; 81; 93 d) *not to be, not to exist.*

لَيْسَ لَكَ *it is not for thee, thou must not.*

لَيْفٌ *fibre of the date-palm.*

لَيْلَةً, لَيْلٍ *pl.* لَيْالٍ (§ 65 p)

night.

مِنَ اللَّيْلِ in the same
night.

مَا *pron.* what? that which;
something which.

مَا *conj.* (§ 101) as
long as.

مَا not (vgl. § 93 d).

مِائَةً (§ 66) *pron.* *mi'atun*
hundred.

مِثْلٌ similitude, the same;
one like, as (cfr.
§ 94 b).

مَجُوسِيٌّ Magian, adherent
of the religion of Zoro-
aster.

مُجُونٌ carelessness, un-
concernedness.

مَدَّ *imp. u* to stretch out.

مُدَّ عَيْنَيْكَ turn thy
eyes.

IV c. acc. pers. et بِ

r. to help one along
to with...aid with...

مَدِينَةً town, city.

مَدِينَةٌ = أَلْمَدِينَةُ

النَّبِيِّ Medina.

أَلْمَدَائِنُ al-Madā'in,

Ctesiphon on the Tigris.

مَرَّ *imp. u* to pass by.

IV to make pass by
(brandish).

مَرَّةً time.

مَرَّةً once.

مُرَّةٌ Murra, name of
a man and of a tribe.

إِمْرَأَةً woman.

مَرْجٌ *pl.* مَرْجٌ meadow.

مَرَدٌ *II* to make smooth.

مَرِضٌ *imp. a* to become sick.

مَرْمَرٌ marble.

مَرْوَانٌ Merwān, name of

a man, here of the
Omayyad Caliph, r.
683—685.

مُسْكٌ musk.

مَسَا IV to enter upon
the evening; to do any-
thing late.

مَسَاءٌ evening.

مَشَى imp. i to go, go on,
march.

مَضَى imp. i to go, go by,
go away, to have exist-
ed formerly.

مَطَرٌ rain, shower.

مَعَ præp. with, along with,
in spite of.

مَعَ ذَلِكَ in addition
to that.

مُعَيْطٌ Mu'ait, man's name.

مَكَّة Mecca.

مَكْرٌ craft, artfulness.

مَكْسٌ market-tax.

مَكْنٌ II c. acc. pers. et
مِنْ r. to put in pos-
session of.

مَلَأَ imp. a, c. acc. et مِنْ
to fill.

مَلَأٌ coll. aristocracy,
nobles.

مَلَقَ V to flatter, seek
to appease.

مَلَكَ imp. i, c. acc. to
rule, govern, reign.

II to make king.

مُلْكٌ rule, govern-
ment, empire, reign,
royalty, wealth.

مِلْكٌ property.

مَلِكٌ pl. مُلُوكٌ king.

مَلِكَةٌ queen.

عَبْدُ الْمَلِكِ 'Abdul-
melik, a man's name,
here of the Omayyad
Caliph, reign. 685—705.

- ^سمَمْلَكَة empire, kingdom.
^سمِنْ *ex* ^سمِنْ *et* ^سمِنْ (§ 5d).
^سمَنْ who? (§ 14); he who, one who, if anyone. (§ 13; 99; 102).
^سمَنْ *who can...me?*
^سمِنْ *præp.* of (something of), belonging to; placed after a negative it increases its force (§ 93b); consisting of; from, away from (separation, starting-point); with the comparative "than"; through (transition).
^سمَعَ *imp. a* to restrain, hinder.
^سمَعَ *VIII* to defend oneself; refuse, be reluctant.
^سمَاتَ *med. و* to die.
^سمَوْتُ *inf.* death.
- ^سمُوسَى Moses.
^سمَالٌ *pl. أَمْوَالٌ* property, possessions.
^سمَاءٌ (§ 65 q) water.
^سمَيْدَانٌ open space.
^سمَارَ *med. ي* *II c.* ^سبَيَّنَ to distinguish between.
^سمَالٌ *med. ي* to decline, incline, strive towards.
^سمَنْبَرٌ pulpit.
^سمُنَابِّهٌ Munabbih, name of a man.
^سنُبْدَةٌ portion, choice piece.
^سنَبَأٌ account, report.
^سنَبِيٌّ *pl. أَنْبِيَاءٌ vel نَبِيُّونَ* prophet.
^سنُبُوَّةٌ prophecy, dignity of prophet.
^سنَجَّارٌ carpenter.
^سفَحْسٌ unclean, dirty.

رَجَسَ نَجَسَ *id.*

نَجْم *star.*

نَجَا *imp. u to become free, to free oneself, escape, be saved.*

نَحَرَ *imp. a to cut the throat, kill.*

نَحْر *throat.*

نَحْنُ *pron. we.*

نَحَا *V to go aside, to retire.*

نَحْو *direction.*

نَحْوَ *præp. towards, in the direction of.*

نَدِيمٌ *pl. نَدَمَاءُ drink-ing-companion.*

نَدَا *III to call out.*

c. acc. to call to.

النُّنْدِرُ *al-Mundir, name of a man.*

نَزَعَ *imp. i to remove, extract.*

VIII to depart.

نَزَلَ *imp. i to alight, dismount, to encamp near (عَلَى), to settle.*

نَزُولٌ *inf. alighting, encamping, settling.*

مَنْزِلٌ *pl. مَنَازِلُ dwelling, place of residence; station.*

نَسَبٌ *descent, genealogy.*

نُسخَةٌ *copy, transcript, list.*

نَسْرٌ *vulture.*

نَسَكَ *imp. u to be pious, to perform one's religious duties conscientiously.*

نُسْكٌ *religiousness.*

مَنَاسِكٌ *pl. مَنْسِكٌ ceremony during the pilgrimage.*

نِسَاءٌ (§ 65 f) *women.*

- نشد *III c. 2 acc.* to adjure, call upon.
 نَصَبَ *imp. u* to set up, erect, fix.
 نَصْرُ *Naṣr*, man's name.
 أَنْصَارُ *pl.* "Helpers" of Muhammed in Medina.
 نَاصِيَةٌ *pl. نَوَاصٍ* forelock.
 مَنَاطِقُ *pl. مَنَاطِقُ* girdle.
 نَظَرَ *imp. u* to see, look, behold.
 c. إِلَى to look at, gaze at.
 نَظَرَ *inf.* seeing, looking at.
 مَنَظَرٌ look, view, aspect, appearance.
 نَعَمْ *part.* yes, certainly.
 أَنْفُسُ *fem., pl.* أَنْفُسُ soul, self (§ 11 e).
 مَنَافِعُ *pl.* مَنَافِعُ use, advantage, useful qualities, acquirements.
 نَفَقَ *IV* to spend.
 نُفَيْلٌ Nufail, man's name.
 نَقَرَ *imp. u* to pick, pierce.
 نَقَّاشٌ engraver, painter.
 نَقَصَ *imp. u* to take away, diminish.
 نَقَمَ *imp. i* to reproach anyone (*c. مِنْ*) with.
 نَكَحَ *imp. i* to marry.
 III to marry.
 X id., wish to marry.
 نَكَرَ *II* to disguise, make so as not to be recognized.
 IV to find strange, deny; *c. acc. r. et عَلَى pers.* to be displeased with anyone for.
 نَهَارٌ day.
 نَهَا *VIII* to arrive at, to come to an end.
 نِهَآيَةً extremity, utmost.
 نِهَآوَنْدُ Nehāwend, town

in North-west Persia.

^سنَوْبَةٌ a body of troupes which takes turns in standing guard.

^سنَارٌ fem. hell-fire.

^سنُورٌ light.

^سنَوْعٌ pl. ^سأَنْوَاعٌ kind, species, variety.

^سنَاقَةٌ female camel.

^سنَامٌ med. و, imp. a to lay oneself down, to go to sleep, to sleep.

^سهَبَطٌ imp. u et i to dart down (of a bird).

^سهَجْرَةٌ flight.

^سالْهَجْرَةُ Muhammed's flight from Mecca to Medina.

^سمُهاجِرٌ companion of Muhammed in the flight.

^سهَجَمَ imp. i, c. عَلَى to rush, hurl oneself upon.

^سهَدْهُدٌ hoopoe.

^سهَدَى to lead the right way.

^سهَدَى to follow the right path.

^سهَدَى true, right guidance.

^سهَدِيَّةٌ pl. ^سهَدَايَا gift, present.

^سهَذَا, fem. ^سهَذِهِ (§ 12 b) this.

^سأَبُو هُرَيْرَةَ Abū Huraira, name of a companion of Muhammed.

^سهَرَبٌ inf. fleeing, flight.

^سهَشَامٌ Hishām, man's name.

^سهَلْ part. interrog.

^سهَمَّ imp. u to intend doing a thing.

^سهَمَّ inf. care.

^سهَوَامٌ pl. ^سهَامَةٌ reptile.

هَمْدَان Hamdān, district
in Southern Arabia.

هُنَيْدَة Hunaida, name of
a castle in Southern
Arabia.

هُنَا *adv.* here, in this
place.

هُوَ *pron.* he.

هَار *med.* و VII to fall in.

هَال *med.* و I et II to fright-
en, terrify.

هَانَ *med.* و to be light, easy.

هَوَاءٌ air, atmosphere.

هِيَ *pron.* III *fem.* she.

هَيْبَة an inspiring with
fear and awe, ma-
jesty.

وَ *conj.* and, also, even.
in an oath with
the genitive: وَاللَّهِ by
God!

وَتَّقِ *imp.* i, c. بِ *pers.* to
place confidence in.

وَجِبَ *imp.* i to be necessary.
IV to appoint, fix.

وَجَدَ *imp.* i to find.

وَجِهَ V to take the direc-
tion of, to go towards.

وَجْهٌ *pl.* وُجُوهُ face,
presence.

وَاحِدٌ one.

وَحْشٌ *pl.* وُحُوشٌ wild
animal.

وَدَعَ *imp.* يَدَعُ to place, let.

وَادٍ valley, water-course.

وَادِي الْقُرَى Wādī al-
Kurā, name of a valley
in North Arabia.

وَرَدَ *imp.* i to descend, go
down.

عَلَى *c.* to come to any-
one.

وَرَّآءُ *præp.* behind.

مِنْ وَرَّآءُ *id.*

وَزِيرٌ *pl.* وَزَرَآءُ vezier.

وَسِخٌ to be dirty.

وَسَعٌ *IV* to put anyone into a comfortable position; to procure riches for.

وَاسِعٌ wide, ample.

وَشْيٌ striped cloth.

وَصَفَ *imp. i* to describe, to state, declare.

وَصَفَاءُ *pl.* وَصِيفٌ slave (who is fit for anything).

وَصَائِفٌ *pl.* وَصِيفَةٌ

• slave-girl (who is fit for anything).

وَصَلَ *imp. i* to unite; to arrive, get to.

وَصَى *IV c. acc. pers.* to

give good advice, esp. on a death-bed.

X c. بِ et خَيْرًا =

إِسْتِيصَاءٌ خَيْرًا (§ 80) to have anyone recommended to one.

وَضَأَ *V* to perform the prescribed ablutions.

وَضَحَ *imp. i* to be clear, evident.

وَضَعُ *imp.* يَضَعُ to lay, place.

VI to be humble, appear to be humble.

مَوْضِعٌ place.

وَعَدَ *V c. acc. pers.* to threaten, to utter threats against anyone.

وَفَدَ *imp. i* to come to, to visit a prince.

وَفْدٌ *pl.* وَفُودٌ number of persons visiting a prince, deputation.

وَفَى *imp. i III c. acc.* to come, arrive at.

تَوَفَّاهُ اللَّهُ، تَوَفَّيْ God has taken him (said of a Muslim) to himself, has let him die a blessed death. *pass.* to die a blessed death.

وَفَاةٌ death, blessed death.

وَقْتُ time.

وَقَارٌ venerableness.

وَقَّاصٌ Wakḳāṣ, name of a man.

وَقَعَ *imp.* يَقَعُ to fall, dart down.

وَقَفَ *imp. i* to stand still, to stand.

وُقُوفٌ *inf.* standing.

وَقَى *V c. acc.* to take care, to be afraid of.

وَكَّلَ *II* to appoint as overseer.

وَلَدَ *imp. i* to bear (child). *Xc. acc.* to beget a son of a woman.

وَلَدٌ *pl.* أَوْلَادٌ child, son (sg. also *coll.*).

أَلْوَلِيدُ al-Walid, name of a man (here of the Omayyad Caliph, r. 705—715).

وَلَّى *II* to turn one's back, to turn back.

c. 2 acc. to appoint anyone as governor over . . .

V to turn one's back, to turn away.

X c. عَلَى *r.* to take possession of.

وَالٍ governor, ruler.

- ^س وَلِيّ *pl.* أَوْلِيَاءُ *elat.* proper name of a bird.
^س أَوْلَى near, appropriate, fit; esp. near to God = saint.
^س وَلَايَةٌ *inf.* becoming governor, rule, reign.
^س وَهْبٌ Wahb, man's name.
^س وَيْلٌ calamity, woe.
^س يَا *part. exclam.* (§ 61) O!
^س يَيْسٌ *imp. a, c.* مِنْ to despair of . . .
^س يَأْسٌ *inf.* despairing, to have no hope.
^س يَتِيمٌ orphan.
^س يَدٌ *fem., pl.* أَيْدٍ (§ 65 r) hand, force, power.
^س يَسَرٌ to be easy.
^س يَسَارٌ left, l. hand.
^س يَسِيرٌ easy, little.
- ^س يَغْفُورٌ proper name of a bird.
^س يَاقُوتٌ Hyacinth, Chrysolite.
^س يَقِظٌ *imp. a* to be awake.
IV to wake.
X to have oneself waked, to awaken.
^س يَقِينٌ *adj.* certain, sure, trustworthy.
^س يَمَنٌ Yemen, South Arabia.
^س يَمَانٍ (§ 49 *not.*) yemenitic.
^س يَمِينٌ right, right hand.
^س عَنْ يَمِينٍ on the right, right hand.
^س ابْنُ مَيْمُونَةَ Ibn Maimūna, man's name.
^س آلْ يَهُودَ *coll.* Jews.
^س يَهُودِيٌّ Jew.

يَوْمٌ *pl.* أَيَّامٌ (§ 65 s) day,
day's journey; (*pl.*
reign). Determ. also
"this day".

يَوْمَ on the day
that . . . (§ 88 c).

يَوْمًا one day, once.

أَلْيَوْمَ (§ 84 a) to-day.

يَوْمَئِذٍ (e. *إِنِ* يَوْمَ) on
that day, then.

B.

pl. = plural, cfr. § 63.

Aaron هَارُونَ.

Abraham إِبْرَاهِيمُ.

abstinence زُهْدٌ.

Abū Bekr al-Rabbānī أَبُو بَكْرٍ الرَّبَّانِيّ.

Abū Dulāma أَبُو دُلَامَةَ.

abundant *see much.*

accept (to) قَبِلَ *imp. a.*

acquire (to cause to) كَسَبَ

IV with two accus.

act well (to) حَسَنَ *IV.*

action فِعْلٌ.

address (to) خَطَبَ *III.*

affair أَمْرٌ.

after, after that *conj.* لَبَّأَ

§ 73 f.

after *prep.* خَلْفَ.

agreeable to *elat.* أَحَبُّ

with إِلَى.

aid (to) عَانَ *med. و IV*

with acc.

‘Alī عَلِيٌّ.

all كُلٌّ *with determ. noun or suffix* § 85 b.

alms (to give in) صَدَقَ

V with ب.

along with *prep.* مَعَ.

already قَدْ § 73 e.

alter (to) غَار *med.* ى II.

although وَإِنَّ § 102.

among فِي.

ample وَاسِعٌ *elat.* § 47 e.

'Amr عَمْرٌ § 65 rem.

and وَ.

angel مَلَكٌ *pl.* § 63, 31.

anger غَضَبٌ.

animal (domestic) بَهِيمَةٌ
pl. § 63, 26.

another than غَيْرٌ *with following gen.*

answer (to give) to جَاب
X med. وَ *with l.*

antidote دَرِيَانِي.

Antioch أَنْطَاكِيَّةٌ.

any مِنْ (*prep.*).

apostatize رَدَّ VIII.

apostle رَسُولٌ.

appear (to) مَثَلَ.

appearance ظُهُورٌ.

apply oneself to (to) عَطَا
IT with acc.

approach (to) قَرَبَ *imp. u.*
with مِنْ.

arise (to, in the morning)
صَبَحَ IV.

as to أَمَّا *with nom. and ف*
in the apodosis.

Asad أَسَدٌ.

ashamed (to be) حَيَّ X
§ 41 c.

ask (to) قَالَ *med.* وَ *with l.* — to ask something
of سَأَلَ *imp. a.* *with two acc.* § 36 b.

ass حِمَارٌ.

assemble (to) جَمَعَ *imp. a.*

assert (to) زَعَمَ *imp. u.* •

astrologer مُنَجِّمٌ.

at *prep.* عِنْدَ.

Bagdad بُغْدَادٌ.

baggage مَتَاعٌ.

- he, exist (to) *كَانَ med.* *و.* beginning *رَأْسٌ*.
 — not to be *لَيْسَ* § 42. believe (to) *أَمِنَ IV*; —
 beard *حَيْةٌ pl.* § 63, 3, believer *id. part. act.*
 § 40 c, rem. b. belly *بَطْنٌ*.
 beardless *أَمْرَدٌ pl.* § 63, 1. beseech of (to) *طَلَبَ III*
 beat (to) *ضَرَبَ imp. i, inf.* *with acc. of person and*
ب of thing.
ضَرَبَ. best *elat. of good.*
 beauty *حُسْنٌ*. — beauties better *elat. of good.*
مَحَاسِنُ. between *بَيْنَ*.
 beautiful *حَسَنٌ fem. سَءَةٌ*; beverage *مَشْرَبٌ pl.* § 63, 29.
elat. § 47 e. — to find birds *coll. طَيْرٌ*.
to be beautiful حسن X. birth *مَوْلِدٌ*.
 because *لِأَنَّ* § 95 a. black *أَسْوَدٌ fem.* § 51 c.
 Bedouin *أَعْرَابِيٌّ*. bless (to) *صَلَا II*.
 before (of place) = be- body *جَسَدٌ pl.* § 63, 19;
 tween the two hands *بَدَن* (nr. 67).
 of (dual stat. constr.). book *كِتَابٌ*.
 beg of (to) *سَأَلَ imp. a,* born (to be) *وُلِدَ V*.
with acc. bottom *غِيَابَةٌ*.
 beggar *part. act. of سَأَلَ*. break (to) *كَسَرَ imp. i.*
 begin, begin with (to) *بَدَأَ*
imp. a, with acc.

bring (to) **جَاءَ** *med.* **ي.**

— to bring an action
against one another
حَكَمَ *VI.* — to bring in

حَضَرَ *IV.* — to bring
into **دَخَلَ** *IV.* — to

bring out **خَرَجَ** *IV.* —
to bring upon **أَتَى** *IV*

with **عَلَى**.

brother **أَخٌ** § 65 a, c; *pl.*

§ 63, 6; *pl.* when =
“friends” § 63, 23.

bury (to) **دَفَنَ** *imp. i, inf.*

دَفَنٌ.

but **فَ**.

by, by means of **بِ**.

Byzantines (the) *coll.* **الرُّومُ**.

Caliph **خَلِيفَةٌ**.

care **هَمٌّ**.

carry onwards (to) **سَارَ**

med. **ي.** *with* **بِ**.

case **خَبَرٌ**.

cast (to) **طَرَحَ** *imp. a.*

cease (to) **زَالَ** *med.* **و.** (*for*
زَوَلَ § 39 a, § 29).

certain one (a) **بَعْضٌ** *with*
pl. of follow. noun.

character **خُلُقٌ** *pl.* § 63,
19.

characteristic **عَلَامَةٌ**.

chastise (to) **حَدَّ** *imp. u.*

chastisement **عَذَابٌ**.

cheap (to become) **رَخَّصَ**
imp. u.

chief **رَبِّيسٌ** *pl.* § 63, 22.

choose (to) **خَارَ** *med.* **ي.**
VIII.

chrysolite **يَاقُوتٌ**.

Christian **نَصْرَانِيٌّ** *pl.* § 63,
28.

claim (to) **دَعَا** *VIII* § 24
rem.

claim **دَعْوَى**.

cloak **رِدَاءٌ**.

clot of blood عَلَقَةٌ^s.

clothe (to) كَسَا^s imp. u.

city مَدِينَةٌ^s.

cognizant of عَلِيمٌ^s بِ.

combat (to) قَتَلَ^s III.

combined (to be) جَمَعَ^s VIII.

come (to) أَتَى^s imp. i. —
to come to one's know-

ledge (concerning) بَلَغَ^s

imp. u, with acc. (and

عَنْ). — to come in

upon دَخَلَ^s imp. u, with

عَلَى. — to come out

from خَرَجَ^s imp. u, with

مِنْ.

command (to) أَمَرَ^s imp. u.

— to command anyone

to do a thing, id. with

acc. and أَنْ^s with the

subj. — to command

anything to be given

to anyone, id. with لِ

of pers. and بِ of thing.

— to command any
thing to be done, id.

with بِ and infn.

command أَمَرَ^s.

companion صَاحِبٌ^s pl.

§ 63, 19.

compassionate رَحِيمٌ^s.

concerning فِي.

confide in (to) أَمِنَ^s VIII.

conquering part. act. of
قَهَرَ.

consider as (to) ظَنَّ^s imp.
u, with acc.

consumed (to be) حَرَقَ^s
VIII.

contain (to) جَبَعَ^s imp. a.

content (to be) رَضِيَ^s imp.

a. — to be content with,
id. with بِ.

contentment قَنَاعَةٌ^s.

- continence ^sفُرُوج (pl. of ^sفَرْج).
 continue (to) ^sوَدَامَ *med.* ^sو.
 contradict (to) ^sخَلَف *III*.
 converse (to) ^sحَدَّث *V*. —
 to converse about, id.
 with ^sبِ.
 core ^sسَوَاد.
 counsel (to ask) ^sشار *med.*
 و *X*.
 country ^sبَلَد *pl.* § 63, 10.
 courage ^sشَجَاعَة.
 cover up (to) ^sسَتَرَ *imp. u.*
 covetousness ^sحِرْص.
 cradle ^sمَهْد.
 crazy *part. pass. of* ^sجَنَّ
fem. ^sكَة.
 creation ^sخَلَق.
 crucify (to) ^sصَلَب *imp. i.*
 cultivated *part. act. of* ^sعَمَرَ
fem. ^sكَة.
 cure ^sشَفَاء.
 cut (to) ^sقَطَعَ *imp. a.* —
 to cut open ^sشَقَّ *imp. u.*
 al-Dahhāk ^sالْحَكَّاکُ.
 Damascus ^sدِمَشْقُ.
 daughter ^sبِنْت.
 day ^sيَوْم *pl.* ^sأَيَّام § 63, 19.
 — one day ^sيَوْمًا —
 to-day ^sالْيَوْم.
 day-time ^sنَهَار.
 dead ^sمَيِّت.
 death ^sمَوْت.
 deceive (to) ^sخَدَعَ *imp. a.*
 decline (to) ^sمَنَعَ *VIII*.
 decree (to) ^sقَضَى *imp. i.*
 demand (to) a thing ^sسَأَلَ
imp. a, with ^sعَنْ § 36 b.
 depend on (to) ^sوَكَلَ *V, with*
 عَلَى.
 desert ^sفَيْفَاء *pl.* § 63, 27,
 § 64 a.

desirous of (to be) شَاقَّ

med. و. VIII, with عَلَى.

detriment نَقْصٌ.

devoted to (to be) هَمَكَ

VIII with فِي.

devotee *part. act. of* عَبْد
V.

die (to) مَاتَ *med.* و.

difficult عَسِيرٌ.

disagree (to) خَلَفَ VIII.

disease دَاءٌ.

disgraceful قَبِيحٌ.

dish طَعَامٌ.

dislike (to) كَرِهَ *imp. a.*

disobedient *part. act. of*

عَصَى.

dissolve (to) ذَابَ *med.* و.

distance مَسَافَةٌ.

distinguish (to) خَصَّ

imp. u.

do (to) عَمِلَ *imp. a.*; فَعَلَ

imp. a (no. 139). — to

do according to عَمِلَ

with بِ.

dog كَلْبٌ; hunting-dog

كَلْبٌ صَيِّدٌ.

door بَابٌ.

drachma دِرْهَمٌ.

draw forth (to) بَرَزَ IV.

dread (to) خَشِيَ *imp. a.*

dress مَلَبَسٌ *pl.* § 63, 29.

drink (to) شَرَبَ *imp. a.*

drunk, drunken سَكْرَانٌ.

dwelling دَارٌ.

East مَشْرِقٌ.

easy يَسِيرٌ.

eat (to) أَكَلَ *imp. u.*; *imperat.*

§ 36 b. — to give to

eat of طَعِمَ IV *with acc.*

pers. and مِنْ.

education أَدَبٌ. — to show

one's education أَدَبَ V.

elder أَكْبَرُ *pl.* § 63, 29.

- elect (to) صَفِيَ *VIII*.
 elegance جَمَالٌ.
 enamoured of (to be) عَشِقَ *imp. a, with acc.*
 enchanter سَاحِرٌ.
 encounter (to) لَقِيَ *III*.
 endurance صَبْرٌ.
 enemy عَدُوٌّ.
 enjoy oneself (to) طَرِبَ *V*.
 entail (to) وَرِثَ *IV*.
 enter (to) دَخَلَ *imp. u.*
 entertain (to) قَرَى *imp. i, inf. قَرَأَ*.
 entrance مَدْخَلٌ.
 entrust (to) anyone with وَدَعَ *X with two accus.*
 envious *part. act. of* حَسَدَ.
 equal سَوَاءٌ.
 ere, *conj.* قَبْلَ أَنْ § 75.
 err (to) غَلَطَ *inf.* غَلَطْتُ.
 error ضَلَالٌ.
 escape (to) نَجَا *imp. u.*
 escape بَدَّ.
 estate صَيْعَةٌ *pl.* § 63, 10.
 eulogize (to) مَدَحَ *imp. a; id. VIII (no. 134).*
 evening (late) عَشِيٌّ.
 every كُلٌّ *with indetermin.*
noun. § 85 b.
 evidence بَيِّنَةٌ.
 evil (to be) سَاءَ *med. و.*
 — to do evil *id. IV.* —
 evil-doer *part. act. of id. IV.*
 evil سُوءٌ.
 example عِبْرَةٌ.
 excellent فَاضِلٌ *elat.* § 47 e.
 except إِلَّا (= إِنْ لَا) § 98.
 — except that إِلَّا أَنَّهُ
 § 95 b.
 excepting مَا خَلَا *with acc.*
 excuse (to) عَذَرَ *imp. i.*
 excuse عُدْرٌ.

- exhort (to) **وَعَظَ** *imp. i*, five **خَمْسَ** §§ 66, 67 a.
 § 38 a.
 exist (to) **وَكَانَ** *med.* **و.** flare up (to) **أَجَّ** *V.*
 exit **خَرَجَ**. flight **هَرَبَ**.
 exterior **عَلَانِيَةً**. flourishing (to make) **عَمَرَ**
imp. u.
 extract (to) **خَرَجَ** *X.* fly (to) from **فَرَّ** *imp. i*, with
 eye **عَيْنَ** § 50. **مِنْ**.
 face **وَجْهَ**. folk **قَوْمَ** *pl.* § 63, 19; **بَشَرَ**
coll. (nr. 120).
 fast (to) **صَامَ** *med.* **و.** follow (to) **تَبَعَ** *imp. a.*
 father **أَبَ** § 65 a. fool *part. act. of* **جَهَلَ**.
 fault **عَيْبَ** *pl.* § 63, 12. for *prep.* **لِ** § 70 h; *conj.*
 favour **نِعْمَةً** *pl.* § 63, 3. **فَإِنَّ** § 71 c.
 fear (to) **خَافَ** *med.* **و.** *imp.* forbid (to) a thing to any-
 a, § 39 a. one **حَرَمَ** *imp. i*, with
 feed (to) **طَعَمَ** *IV.* two *accus.*
 fight (to) with one another force (to) **ضَرَّ** *VIII.* § 24
قَتَلَ *VI.* rem.
 find (to) **وَجَدَ** *imp. i*, § 38 a. forelock **نَاصِيَةً** *pl.* § 63,
 fire **نَارَ**. 25, 64 a; § 40 b.
 first **أَوَّلَ**. forgive (to) **غَفَرَ** *imp. i.*
 fit **وَلِيَ** *elat.* **أَوَّلَى**. forgiving **غَفُورَ**.

forgiveness (to beg) غفر *X.*

form صُورَةٌ *pl.* § 63, 4.

four أَرْبَعٌ §§ 66, 67 a.

fourth رَابِعٌ.

friend صَدِيقٌ *pl.* § 63, 20;

intimate friend خَلِيلٌ.

friendly لَطِيفٌ.

from *prep.* مِنْ.

fruit ثَمَرَةٌ.

gain (to) كَسَبَ *V.*

game صَيْدٌ.

garment ثَوْبٌ *pl.* § 63, 10,

§ 39 e rem.

gate بَابٌ.

gate-keeper بَوَّابٌ.

gather up (to) لَقَطَ *VIII.*

get to (to) نَهَى *VIII with*

إِلَى. — to get through

قَطَعَ *imp. a.*

gift مَوْهَبٌ *pl.* § 63, 29.

girl جَارِيَةٌ.

give (to) عَطا *IV with two*
acc. — to give way *inf.*

خُضُوعٌ

glance بَصَرٌ *pl.* § 63, 19.

glorify (to) سَبَحَ *II.*

glorious فَاخِرٌ *elat.* § 47 e.

glory شَرَفٌ.

go round (to) دَارَ *med. و.*

— to go away ذَهَبَ

imp. a. — to go on

مَشَى *imp. i.* — to go

out خَرَجَ *imp. u.* — to

let go رَسَلَ *IV.*

goblet قَدَحٌ.

god إِلَهٌ; God اَللَّهُ, by God

وَاللَّهُ.

gold-piece دِينَارٌ *pl.* § 65 k.

good *noun and adj.* خَيْرٌ

elat. id. — to be good

حَسُنَ *imp. u.* — to

make good طَابَ *med.*

ي *IV.*

government رِئَاسَة^s or
 رِئَاسَة^s.
 governor وِلي^s.
 grandee مَلِك^s *pl.* § 63, 12.
 grant (to) قَطَعَ *IV* with
two accus.
 grateful (to be) شَكَرَ *imp. u.*
 great كَبِير^s. — to be, be-
 come great كَبُرَ *imp. u.*
 green رَطَب^s.
 greeting سَلَام^s.
 guard (to) صَانَ *med. و*;
inf. صَوَّنَ^s.
 guest ضَيْف^s.
 hand يَد^s.
 al-Hāritُ الْحَارِثُ.
 Harūn al-Rashīd هَارُونُ
 الرَّشِيدُ.
 hate بَغَضَ^s.
 have (to), is expressed by

the subject in the dative
(with لِ) followed by the
object in the nom. (as
 لَهُ مَالٌ^s he has money);
occasionally a form of
 كَانَ^s to be stands before
 the subject (as كَانَ لَهُ^s
 مَالٌ he had money). —
 not to have either as in
 the last example, but
 with لَيْسَ^s (§ 42) instead
 of كَانَ لَهُ مَالٌ^s)
 or لَا^s with following ob-
 ject (§ 81 b) and dative
 of subject (لَا مَالَ لَهُ^s).
 he هُوَ § 11 a. — he who
 مَنْ § 13 b.
 head رَأْس^s.
 hear (to) سَمِعَ *imp. a, inf.*
 سَمَاع^s.
 heart قَلْب^s.
 heaven سَمَاء^s.

- heir *part. act. of* وِثْر *pl.*
 § 63, 7.
 hell-fire النَّارُ.
 help (to) نَصَرَ *imp. u.* —
 to demand help of عَان
med. و. X with بِ.
 Heraclius هِرَقْلُ.
 high عَلِيٌّ.
 hope for (to) رَجَا *imp. u.*,
with acc.
 horse دَابَّةٌ.
 horsemen *coll.* خَيْلٌ.
 house بَيْتٌ.
 how كَيْفَ.
 however وَلَا كَيْنٌ *with follow.*
verb.
 humble (to be) وَضَعَ *VI.*
 hungry *part. act. of* جَاعَ
med. و.
 hundred مِائَةٌ § 66, 67 c.
 hunt (to) صَادَ *med. ي.* —
 to go forth to hunt *id. V.*
 hunt, chase صَيْدٌ.
 hurry (to) عَجَلَ *II.*
 al-Husain الْحُسَيْنُ.
 hypocrisy رِيَاءٌ.
 hypocrite *part. act. of*
 نفق *III.*
 I أَنَا.
 ignorance جَهْلٌ.
 ignorant *part. act. of* جهل.
 idea مَعْنَى *pl.* § 63, 27,
 § 64 a.
 if إِنْ § 102; *in hypothe-*
tical clauses لَوْ *with the*
perf. — if anyone مَنْ
 § 102.
 illustrious جَلِيلٌ *elat.*
 § 47 e.
 imperfection *inf. of* فَاتٌ
med. و. VI.
 in *prep.* فِي.
 incumbent on (to be) وَجَبَ
imp. i, with عَلَى § 38 a.

- indicate (to) دَلَّ *imp. u.*, *with* عَلَى.
- indication دَلِيلٌ.
- indigestion بَشَمٌ.
- inform (to) خَبَرَ *IV.*
- inhabit (to) سَكَنَ *imp. u.*
- inhabitants أَهْلٌ.
- inquire concerning (to) فِي *X with* فَتَى.
- intelligent *part. act. of* عَقْلٌ.
- interior سَرِيرَةٌ.
- interrupted (to be) قَطَعَ *VII.*
- into *prep.* فِي.
- invest (to) anyone with عَلَى *imp. a, with* خَلَعَ *of pers. and acc. of thing.*
- inviolability حُرْمَةٌ.
- invite to (to) دَعَا *imp. u.*, *with* إِلَى.
- Islam اَلْإِسْلَامُ.
- Israel إِسْرَائِيلُ.
- Jalāl al-dīn جَلَالُ الدِّينِ.
- Jerusalem اَلْقُدْسُ.
- Jews (the) *coll.* اَلْيَهُودُ.
- join (to) لَحَقَ *imp. a, with* بَ.
- Jonah يُونُسُ.
- Joseph يُوسُفُ.
- joy سُورُورٌ.
- justice عَدْلٌ.
- keep from (to) مَنَعَ *imp. a,* *with acc. and* مِنْ.
- keep intact (to) بَقِيَ *IV.*
- kill (to) قَتَلَ *imp. u.*
- kindle (to) وَقَدَ *imp. i.*
- king مَلِكٌ.
- kingdom مَمْلَكَةٌ.
- kiss (to) قَبَلَ *II.*
- knock (to) at the door of

- عَلَى *imp. u, with* دَقَّ *of pers. and acc. of door.* leave, leave off (to) تَرَكَ *imp. u.*
 know (to) عَرَفَ *imp. a;* دَرَى *imp. i (nr. 132);* let (to) وَدَعَ *imp. a § 38 a.*
imp. i (nr. 73). liar (to declare anyone to be a) كَذَبَ *II.*
 knowing *part. act. of* عَلِمَ; liberal سَخِيَ
elat. § 47 e. lie, tell a lie (to) كَذَبَ
 Koran الْقُرْآنُ. *imp. i; inf.* كَذَبَ
 lack عَدَمٌ. life (the future, next world)
 lamp سِرَاجٌ. الْأَخِرَةُ
 laugh (to) ضَحِكَ *imp. a. —* life-time حَيَاةٌ
 to laugh at id. *with* مِنْ. light (to) سَرَجَ *IV. — to*
 — to make laugh id. give light to ضَاءَ *med.*
IV. و *IV, with* ل.
 law-code شَرِيعَةٌ. like كَ with *gen. — like*
 lawful (to be) حَلَّ *imp. i.* as كَمَا.
 lead (to) قَادَ *med. و.* likeness مَثَلٌ.
 learn (to) عَلِمَ *V.* little قَلِيلٌ.
 learned عَلِيمٌ *pl. § 63, 22.* live (to) عَاشَ *med. ي.*
 learning عِلْمٌ. living حَيٌّ.
 long طَوِيلٌ.

- long for (to) شاق *med.* و *ban*
VIII, with عَلَى *med.* ى IV.
- look at (to) نَظَرَ *imp. u.* mankind *coll.* النَّاسُ
with إِلَى.—to look down manner وَضَعَ ^s
IV.—to look into marry (to) *act.* زَاجَ *med.*
VIII, with فِي § 24, II.—*neut. id.* V.
rem. Mary مَرِيَمُ ^s
- lord رَبٌّ ^s meat لَحْمٌ ^s
- love, fall in love with (to) Mecca مَكَّةُ ^s
حب IV, with *acc.* medicine طِبٌّ ^s
- love حُبٌّ ^s meet (to) لَقِيَ *imp. a.*
- loving *inf.* حَبَّةٌ ^s mention (to) ذَكَرَ *imp. u.*
- lower (to) غَضَّ *imp. u.* mien مَنْظَرٌ ^s
- lust رَغْبَةٌ ^s—lusts شَهَوَاتٌ ^s mighty عَظِيمٌ ^s *elat.* § 47 e.
- make, make to be (to) جَعَلَ *imp. a.* (with two *accus.*). mill طَاحُونَةٌ ^s
—to make (poetry) قَالَ *u.* with *acc.*
- med.* و. miracle مُعْجَزَةٌ ^s
- malady سَقَامٌ ^s misfortune مُصِيبَةٌ ^s *pl.*
- al-Ma'mûn الْمَأْمُونُ ^s § 63, 26.
- man رَجُلٌ ^s *pl.* § 63, 10; مَرءٍ ^s modesty حَيَاءٌ ^s
- (*nrs.* 2, 43, 102). moment (this) السَّاعَةُ ^s

- money مَالٌ^s. — piece of name اِسْمٌ^s.
 money دِرْهَمٌ^s *pl.* § 63, 29. narrow ضَيْقٌ^s (= ضَيِّقٌ^s)
 month شَهْرٌ^s. *elat.* § 47 e.
 morning (early) بُكْرَةٌ^s. nature طَبْعٌ^s *pl.* § 63, 10.
 morrow, to-morrow غَدٌ^s. near (to place) قَرَبٌ^s *II.*
 Moses مُوسَى^s. needle اِبْرَةٌ^s.
 mosque مَسْجِدٌ^s. neighbour جَارٌ^s.
 most *elat.* of much. niggardly بَخِيلٌ^s. — to de-
 mountain جَبَلٌ^s. clare anyone to be n.
 much كَثِيرٌ^s *elat.* § 47, e. — بخل *II.*
 to be much, abundant niggardliness بَخْلٌ^s.
 كَثُرَ^s *imp. u.* — to make night لَيْلٌ^s.
 much كَثُرَ^s *IV.* noble كَرِيمٌ^s. — nobles *coll.*
 al-Mugîra الْمُغِيرَةُ^s. مَلَأَ^s.
 Muhammed مُحَمَّدٌ^s. not لَا.
 music سَمَاعٌ^s. now فَ.
 Muslim (to become a) سَلِمَ^s. nutriment قُوْتٌ^s.
IV. — Muslim *id. part.* O! يَا § 61.
act. obedient to (to be) قَنَتَ^s
 Muzâhim مُزَاهِمٌ^s. *imp. u, with* لِ.
 naked عُرْيَانٌ^s *fem.* سَاءَ^s. observe (to) عَبرَ *VIII.*

occasion as a consequence
(to) عقب *IV*, with two
accus.

Omar عُمر.

on account of *prep.* لِ.

one as noun or adj. وَاحِدٌ
fem. سَاقَةٌ; with pron.
suffix أَحَدٌ.

only إِنَّمَا.

onslaught بَأْسٌ.

open (to) فَتَحَ *imp. a; inf.*
فَتَحَ.

opinion (to be of) رَأَى
imp. a, § 41 b.

or أَوْ.

other آخَرُ.

overtake (to) دَرَكَ *IV*.

owner صَاحِبٌ *pl.* § 63, 19.

page, boy غُلَامٌ.

Paradise الْجَنَّةُ.

pardon (to) عَفَا *imp. u*,
with عَلَى.

pass on (to let) جاز *med.*
وَ *IV*.

pearls coll. لُؤْلُؤٌ.

pebble حَصَاةٌ.

people أَهْلٌ.

perhaps لَعَلَّ § 95 a.

perish (to) هَلَكَ *imp. i*;—
to cause to p. id. *IV*.

person (man) إِنْسَانٌ.

Pharao فِرْعَوْنُ.

physician طَبِيبٌ.

pick up (to) لَقَطَ *imp. u*.

piety دِيَانَةٌ.

place مَوْطِنٌ *pl.* § 63, 29.

place (to) وَصَعَ *imp. a*,
§ 38 a.

plants coll. نَبَاتٌ (*masc.*)

please (to) عَجِبَ *IV*.—
to be well pleased with

عَنِ *imp. a* with رَضِيَ.

pleasure لَذَّةٌ *pl.* § 53.

- pliancy لِينٌ.
 poem, poetry شِعْرٌ *pl.* § 63,
 19.
 poet شَاعِرٌ.
 poison سَمٌ.
 polite scholar ظَرِيفٌ *pl.*
 § 63, 22.
 poor فَقِيرٌ *pl.* § 63, 22.
 possessor ذُوْ *fem.* ذَاتُ.
 poverty فَقْرٌ.
 power قُوَّةٌ.
 praise (to) حَمِدَ *imp. a.*
 praise ذِكْرٌ.
 pray (to) صَلَا *II.*
 prayer صَلَاةٌ (= صَلَوَةٌ
 § 39 a) *pl.* § 59.—direc-
 tion of prayer قِبْلَةٌ.—
 leader of prayer إِمَامٌ.
 preach to (to) خَطَبَ *imp.*
u, with acc.
 precede (to) قَدَمَ *V.*
- prepare (to) صَلَحَ *II.*
 presence حُضْرَةٌ.
 present (gift) صِلَةٌ.
 preserve (to) حَفِظَ *imp. a.*
 pride كِبَرٌ.
 prince أَمِيرٌ *pl.* § 63, 22.
 prison سِجْنٌ.
 promise وَعْدٌ.
 prophecy (gift of) نُبُوَّةٌ.—
 to pretend to prophecy
 نَبَأَ *V.*
 prophet نَبِيٌّ *pl.* § 63, 20.
 prostrate oneself (to) سَجَدَ
imp. u.
 protect (to) حَرَسَ *imp. u, i.*
 provide for (to) رَزَقَ *imp. u,*
with two accus.
 punishment نُقُوبَةٌ.
 purify (to) طَهَرَ *II.*—to p.
 oneself id. *V.*
 purse صُرَّةٌ.

- pursue (to) **تَبَعَ** VIII.
 put (to) **جَعَلَ** *imp. a.*—to
 put off till **أَخَّرَ** II. *with* ل.
 qualify (to) *inf.* **وَصَفَّ**.
 raise, raise up (to) **رَفَعَ**
 imp. a; inf. **رَفَعَ**.
 Ramadân **رَمَضَانُ**.
 al-Rashîd **الرَّشِيدُ**.
 reach (to) **دَرَكَ** IV.
 read (to) **قَرَأَ** *imp. a.*
 recede from (to) **بَعَدَ** *imp.*
 a, with مِنْ.
 recite (to) **قَرَأَ** *imp. a.*
 reed-pen **قَلَمٌ**.
 reflection *inf. of* **فَكَرَ** V.
 refuse (to) **أَبَى** *imp. a.*—
 to r. to do id. *with* أَنْ
 and subj.
 regret **نَدِمَ**.
 relate (to) **حَكَى** *imp. i.*
 related to **قَرِيبٌ** *with* مِنْ.
 religion **دِينٌ**.
 rely on (to) **وَكَلَ** VIII, *with*
 عَلَى § 38 c.
 repel (to) **رَدَّ** *imp. u.*
 repent (to) **تَابَ** *med. u.*
 repentance **نَدَامَةٌ**.
 report **خَبَّرَ**.
 reproach (to) **لَامَ** *med. u.*
 restore (to) **وَرَّاحَ** *med. u.* IV.
 restrain from (to) **كَفَّ** *imp.*
 u, with acc. and عَنْ.—
 to r. oneself from id.
 with عَنْ.
 resurrection **قِيَامَةٌ**.
 return to (to) **رَجَعَ** *imp. i,*
 with إِلَى.
 right (due) **حَقٌّ**.
 right, right hand **يَمِينٌ**.
 rise in value (to) **غَلَا** *imp. u.*
 roof **سَقْفٌ**.
 routed (to be) **هَزَمَ** VII.

rule (to) سَاسَ *med. u.*

run races (to) سبق *VIII.*

saddle (of an ass) بَرَدَعَةٌ *s.*

—saddle-girth حِزَامٌ *s.*

safe (to be) سَلِمَ *imp. a.*

al-Saffâh السَّفَّاحُ

salt مِلْحٌ *s.*

save (to) سلم *II.*

say (to) قَالَ *med. u.*—to

say of anyone *id. with*

عَنْ.—to s. to anyone
id. with ل.

scatter (to) فَتَرَ *imp. u, i.*

sea بَحْرٌ *s.*

second ثَانٍ

secret سِرٌّ *pl. § 63, 19.*

security ضَمَانٌ *s.*

see (to) رَأَى *imp. a, § 41 b.*

seedy *part. pass. of* خَمَرَ

seek (to) طَلَبَ *imp. u.*—

to s. for oneself *id. V.*

seemly (to be) بَغَى *VII.*

seize (to) أَخَذَ *imp. u.*

self نَفْسٌ *§ 11 e.*

send (to) رَسَلَ *IV.*—to s.

to *id. with إِلَى.*

serpent ثُعْبَانٌ *s.*

servant (i. e. of God) عَبْدٌ *s.*

pl. § 63, 10.

serve wine to (to) سَقَى *imp.*

i, with acc.

set about (to) صَارَ *med. u.*

with imp. § 74 c. rem.

seventy سَبْعُونَ

shadow ظِلٌّ

shift (to) صَرَفَ *imp. i.*

ship سَفِينَةٌ *s.*

shirt قَبِيصٌ *s.*

shoulder كَتِفٌ *s.*

sign آيَةٌ *pl. § 53.*

silent (to be) صَمِتَ *inf. s.*

sin خَطِيئَةٌ *s.*

singing (art of) غِنَاءٌ

- sit with (to) *جلس* *III, with*
acc.
 size *قَامَة*^s.
 slave *مَبْلُوك*^s *pl.* § 63, 30.—
 slave-girl *جَارِيَة*^s *pl.* § 63,
 25, § 64 a.
 sleep, go to sleep (to) *نَامَ*
med. و, imp. a; part. act.
pl. § 63, 10; § 39 e, rem.
 small *صَغِير*^s.—to become
s. صَغَرَ imp. a.
 smoke *دُخَان*^s.
 snow *ثَلَج*^s.
 so *conj. فَ*.
 sober *part. act. of صَحَا*.
 Socrates *سُقْرَاط*^s.
 salicitude *هَمَة*^s.
 son *ابْن*^s § 65 b (the sound
 plural with names of
 tribes).
 song *أَغْنِيَة*^s *pl.* § 63, 27.
- sorrow *حُزْن*^s.
 spare (to) *حَيَّ* *X, § 41 c.*
 speech *قَوْل*^s.
 spend (to) (*of time*) *inf.*
تَطَع^s.
 spirit *رُوح*^s.
 staff *عَصَا*.
 stand (to) *قَامَ med. و; part.*
act. pl. § 63, 10, § 39 e,
 rem.—to stand still
وَقَف imp. i.
 star *نَجْم*^s.
 start off (to) *وجه V.*
 stay (to) *قام med. و IV.*
 steal (to) *سَرَق imp. i.*
 stratagem *حِيلَة*^s.
 stream *سَيْل*^s.
 strength *حَوْل*^s.
Šu'ba *شُعْبَة*^s.
 submissive (to be) *ذَلَّ V.*
 subsistence *رِزْق*^s.

sufficiency كِفَايَةٌ.

supplication دُعَاءٌ.

surely لَ (after إِنَّ).

tail ذَنْبٌ.

take (to) أَخَذَ *imp. u.*—

(of a city) فَتَحَ *imp. a.*

to t. away ذَهَبَ *imp. a.*,

with ب.—to t. hold of

أَخَذَ *imp. u.*, with ب.

talk to (to) كَلَّمَ *II*, with

acc.—to t. to one an-

other id. *V*.

talk كَلَامٌ.

tattle لَفْظٌ.

teach (to) عَلَّمَ *II*, with two *accus.*

ten عَشْرٌ §§ 66, 67 a.

than مِنْ.

that pron. ذَلِكَ § 12 c.

that (in order that) لِ with *subj.* § 75.

that conj. أَنْ (before a *verb*); أَنَّ (before a noun § 95 a).

that which مَا.

then فَ.

thereupon ثُمَّ.

thief لَصٌّ *pl.* § 63, 12.

thing شَيْءٌ *pl.* § 63, 19.

think (to) ظَنَّ *imp. u.*, with two *accus.*; *inf.* ظَنٌّ.

third ثَالِثٌ § 68 a.

thirty ثَلَاثُونَ §§ 66, 67 b.

this هَذَا § 12 b.

Thora (the) التَّوْرَةُ.

those who مَنْ § 13 b.

thou أَنْتَ.

thought فِكْرٌ.

three ثَلَاثٌ §§ 66, 67 a.

through (by means of) *prep.* بِ.

throw away (to) رَمَى *imp.*

- i.*—to throw down لَقِيَ trustworthiness اَمَانَةٌ^s.
 IV. truth صِدْقٌ^s.
 tidings, to give glad tidings to anyone of a thing بَشْرٌ II, with acc. of pers. and بِ. turn (to) مَالَ med ي.—
 to turn from عَرَضٌ VI, with عَنْ.—to t. away (act.) رَدَّ imp. u.—to t. away from (neut.) وَلَى II, with مِنْ.
 time زَمَانٌ.—(proper) time وَقْتُ.
 tipsy نَشْوَانٌ.
 title-page عُنْوَانٌ.
 to (direction) prep. إِلَى; (sign of the dative) لِ.
 tongue لِسَانٌ pl. § 63, 18.
 towards prep. إِلَى.
 transgression ذَنْبٌ pl. § 63, 12.
 transitory part.act. of فَنَى.
 travel (to) سَارَ med. ي.
 treasure خَزِينَةٌ.
 tree شَجَرَةٌ.
 tribe قَبِيلَةٌ pl. § 63, 26.
 trick حِيلَةٌ.
- unworthiness اَمَانَةٌ^s.
 truth صِدْقٌ^s.
 turn (to) مَالَ med ي.—
 to turn from عَرَضٌ VI, with عَنْ.—to t. away (act.) رَدَّ imp. u.—to t. away from (neut.) وَلَى II, with مِنْ.
 twinkling لَحْظَةٌ^s.
 'Ubaid عُبَيْدٌ.
 ugly قَبِيحٌ fem. سَاءَةٌ.
 unbeliever part.act. cf كَفَرَ pl. § 53.
 uncover (to) كَشَفَ imp. i.
 understanding عَقْلٌ.
 unmindful of (to be) سَلَا V, with عَنْ.
 until conj. حَتَّى generally with subj.
 upon prep. فَوْقَ.
 used to (he) كَانَ med. وَ with follow. imp. § 74 c.

- value ^٩قِيَمَةٌ.
 vehemence ^٩جِدَّة.
 vehement ^٩عَاصِفٌ.
 verily ^٩إِنَّ §§ 95, 71 c.
 viand ^٩مَطْعَمٌ pl. § 63, 29.
 violent ^٩شَدِيدٌ.
 wade through (to) ^٩خَاضَ
 med. و, with acc.
 want (to) ^٩رَادَ *med. و IV.*
 want ^٩حَاجَةٌ.
 war (holy) ^٩فِعَالٌ of
 جهد *III.*
 Waraka ^٩وَرَقَةٌ.
 wash (to) ^٩غَسَلَ *imp. i.*
 waste ^٩غَامِرٌ *fem. ٩*—to
 render waste ^٩خَرَبَ *II.*
 water ^٩مَاءٌ.
 well ^٩جُبٌّ..
 West ^٩مَغْرِبٌ.
 whale ^٩حُوتٌ.
 what *rel. interr.* ^٩مَا.
 when *rel. interr.* ^٩مَتَى; *conj.*
 إِذَا § 101.
 where? ^٩أَيْنَ.—wherefrom,
 whence ^٩مِنْ أَيْنَ.
 which *relat.* ^٩الَّذِي.
 whichever ^٩أَيُّ § 13 c.
 while (a) ^٩سَاعَةٌ.
 whilst *cfr.* § 100.
 who *rel.* ^٩الَّذِي; *interr.* ^٩مَنْ.
 whole ^٩جَمِيعٌ.
 why? ^٩لِمَ; why then? ^٩لِمَاذَا.
 wick ^٩دُبَالَةٌ.
 wickedness ^٩شَرٌّ.
 will (to) ^٩شَاءَ *med. ي.*
 wind ^٩رِيحٌ § 50.
 wine ^٩خَمْرٌ.
 wisdom ^٩حِكْمَةٌ.
 wise ^٩حَكِيمٌ pl. § 63, 22.
 wish (to) ^٩رَادَ *med. و IV.*

- with *prep.* بِ. — with re-
gard to *prep.* فِي.
- without بِغَيْرِ (*with gen.*). .
- woe to! وَيْلٌ لِّ
- wolf ذِئْبٌ
- woman امْرَأَةٌ, امْرَأَةٌ. —
women نِسَاءٌ
- wood عُودٌ. — piece of wood
خَشَبَةٌ
- word كَلِمَةٌ
- work عَمَلٌ *pl.* § 63, 19.
- world (the, this) الدُّنْيَا
- worst شَرٌّ
- write to (to) كَتَبَ *imp. u.*
with إِلَى.
- wrong (to, to do) ظَلَمَ *imp.*
i; inf. ظُلْمٌ
- Yazîd يَزِيدٌ
- ye أَنْتُمْ
- year سَنَةٌ
- yes نَعَمْ
- young صَغِيرٌ *elat.* § 47 e,
pl. § 63, 29.
- young man فَتًى *pl.* § 63, 23.
- youth غُلَامٌ
- Zaid زَيْدٌ

ERRATA.

Paradigmata.

3, 1 يَقْتَلَانِ.

6, Inf. III قَتَالٌ.

7, Part. IX مَقْتُلٌ.

8, II fem. Pl. قَرَرْتُنِ.

9, III fem. Sing. Imperf. Ind.

and II masc. تُقَرِّ.

15, Perf. Act. IV أَقَادَ.

20, Inf. IV إِقْضَاءٌ.

H. Reuther's Verlagsbuchhandlung in Berlin S.W.
Keilinschriftliche Bibliothek

Sammlung

von

assyrischen und babylonischen Texten

in

Umschrift und Übersetzung.

In Verbindung mit

Dr. L. Abel, Dr. C. Bezold, Dr. P. Jensen,

Dr. F. E. Peiser, Dr. H. Winckler

herausgegeben

von

Eberhard Schrader.

- I Band. XVI, 218 S. gr. 8. Mit einer Karte M. 9.—.
II. „ VI, 292 S. gr. 8. „ „ „ M. 12.—.
III. „ 2. Hälfte, IV, 147 S. gr. 8. M. 6.—.

Das vorstehende Unternehmen ist dazu bestimmt, die seit einer Reihe von Jahren im Bereiche des alten Assyrien und Babylonien gemachten Inschriftenfunde in einer chronologisch und zugleich sachlich geordneten Sammlung in ihren wichtigsten Repräsentanten zu vereinigen und in transcribirtem Text mit gegenüber stehender deutscher Übersetzung vorzulegen. Wird die Wiedergabe des transcribirten Originaltextes den Anforderungen strenger Wissenschaft Genüge zu leisten bestrebt sein, so wird die beigefügte wortgetreue Übersetzung die für die Geschichte so hochwichtigen Inschriftenfunde auch den nicht assyriologisch vorgebildeten Lesern, in erster Linie Historikern und Theologen, aber auch Juristen und Alterthumsfreunden im weitesten Sinne des Worts zugänglich zu machen suchen. Durch sorgfältige literarische Nachweise und die Beifügung sachlicher und sprachlicher Erläuterungen in knappster Form ist für die Orientirung des Lesers auf dem betreffenden Gebiete in entsprechender Weise gesorgt. Bezüglich der bei Auswahl, Transcription und Übersetzung im Einzelnen befolgten Grundsätze verweisen wir auf das Vorwort.

Das Zusammenwirken einer Reihe von fachmännischen Gelehrten, an deren Spitze Prof. Dr. Eberh. Schrader in Berlin steht, dürfte dem Werke eine dauernde Bedeutung sichern.

Von den bereits erschienenen Bänden der „Keilinschriftlichen Bibliothek“ umfasst Band I die historischen Texte des altassyrischen Reichs nebst chronologischen Beigaben; Band II bringt in Umschrift und Übersetzung, sowie mit den nöthigen einleitenden Bemerkungen und sonstigen Erläuterungen versehen, historische Texte des neuassyrischen Reichs nebst einem Anhang und chronologischen Beigaben; Band III wird in zwei Abtheilungen erscheinen, von denen die erste die altbabylonischen Inschriften, die zweite die des Neubabylonischen Reichs enthalten wird. Die zunächst erscheinende erste Abtheilung des III. Bandes wird nachstehende Inschriften bringen:

Königsinschriften von Ur, Erech, Larsam, Nipur u. s. w.;

Inschriften Gudea's aus Tello;

Inschriften Königs Hammurabi von Babylon;

Inschrift Königs Agukakrimi;

Inschriften von Tell-el-Amarna;

Zwei Inschriften Königs Nebukadnezar's I.;

Steintafelinschrift vom Sonnentempel zu Sippar;

Inschriften Šamaš-sum-ukin's.

dazu: eine Karte der Entwicklung der babylonischen Theilherrschaften und des babylonischen Reichs.

Die ganze Sammlung ist auf vier, in jährlichen Zwischenräumen erscheinende Bände im Umfange von je ca. 15 bis 20 Bogen bemessen; jedem Bande historischen Inhalts wird, soweit erforderlich, eine erläuternde Karte von Prof. H. Kiepert beigegeben sein.

Indem wir zur Subscription auf die

Keilinschriftliche Bibliothek

hiermit ergebenst einladen, bemerken wir, dass jede solide Buchhandlung in der Lage ist, die erschienenen beiden ersten Bände auf Verlangen zur Einsicht vorzulegen.

HEBREW GRAMMAR

with Reading book, Exercises, Literature and Vocabularies

by

Hermann L. Strack, D. D., Ph. D.

Professor of Theology in Berlin.

Translated from the German by Prof. Archd. R. S. Kennedy.

Second enlarged edition. 8. XVI. 264 p. cloth 5/.

deutsche Ausgabe: Dritte neubearbeitete Auflage. M. 3 60.

édition française traduite par A. F. Baumgartner. Édition revue et augmentée par l'auteur. 8. XII. 250 p. sewed 3/6d.

Opinions and Reviews.

Le Muséon, Janvier 1886: La grammaire hébraïque de Mr. Strack, spécialement dans la seconde édition, mérite d'être qualifiée d'excellente; elle donne ce qu'un livre de classe doit fournir pour mériter cette qualification... C'est surtout dans l'exposé du verbe que l'auteur témoigne d'une connaissance magistrale et d'une méthode scientifique, unie à un système pratique excellent...

Rev. Prof. Aikin (Princeton) in: *The Presbyterian Review*, July 1886. *This little book will be found useful even by advanced Hebrew scholars.*

The American 1886, No. 290: It is yet the best Hebrew Grammar for reaching purposes which has thus far appeared.

The Guardian 1886, Aug. 25: A work which has a high reputation in Germany. It is "the result of many years' experience" in practical teaching.

Rev. Prof. Kirkpatrick (Cambridge) in: *The Expositor*, June 1886: Prof. Strack's name is a guarantee of accurate and careful work.

Rev. Ch. H. H. Wright (Dublin) in: *Irish Ecclesiastical Gazette*, July 1886: A most valuable synopsis of Hebrew Grammar... *The syntax is peculiarly satisfactory.*

Prof. Will. Harper (Yale College) in: *Hebraica*, January 1886: In this work, Dr. Strack has given an indication of the Hebrew learning for which he is so well known, not only in Europe, but also in America. But more than this, he has indicated his ability as a practical teacher. *The book is fresh, vigorous, scientific.*

Prof. S. R. Driver (Oxford) in: *The Academy*, Dec. 1883 [1^{re} édit.]: The work is an eminently practical one and bears traces throughout of the independent labour, which has been bestowed upon it.

Prof. Kautsch (Tübingen) in: *Theologische Literaturzeitung* 1884, No. 2: „Überall gibt sich gründliche Vertrautheit mit dem Stoff und reichliche pädagogische Erfahrung kund.“

Williams & Norgate, 14, Henrietta Str., Cov. Garden, London; and 20, South Frederick Str., Edinburgh.—B. Westermann & Co., 812, Broadway, New York.

H. Reuther's Verlagsbuchhandlung in Berlin S.W.

THEODOR BENFEY, KLEINERE SCHRIFTEN.

Ausgewählt und herausgegeben von

Dr. Adalbert Bezzenberger.

*Gedruckt mit Unterstützung des Königlich preussischen Kultusministeriums und der
Königlichen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften zu Göttingen*

Erster Band. Erste und zweite Abtheilung in einem Bande.
Mit dem Bildnis Th. Benfey's.

1890 XL, 341 S.; 199 S. gr. 8^o. M. 22.—.

Man macht sich wohl keiner Uebertreibung oder Ungerechtigkeit schuldig, wenn man behauptet, dass Benfey alle eigentlichen Sanscritisten unter den Zeitgenossen an linguist. Urtheil, alle Linguisten in seiner besonders durch tiefgehendes Studium Paninis und der Veden genährten Kenntniss des Sanscrit übertraf. Es bleibt daher ein grosses Verdienst des Herausgebers, die vorliegenden Arbeiten der Gelehrtenwelt erhalten zu haben. Ueberall, wo Benfey mit seiner Arbeit ernstlich eingesetzt hat, hat er fördernd gewirkt. Dies gilt am meisten für das Gebiet der altindischen Philologie, wie denn auch von den beiden erschienenen Theilen der erste, das Sanscritphilologische umfassende, die wertvollsten Stücke enthält. Die durch Geist und Gelehrsamkeit auch den heutigen Leser in Staunen versetzende Abhandlung über „Indien“ zeigt, wie weit er es 1840 bereits gebracht hatte etc. (Aus „Gott. Gel.-Anzeiger“, 1890, 10.)

ORIENTALISCHE BIBLIOGRAPHIE

Unter Mitwirkung der Herren

Dr. A. Bezzenberger, Dr. Th. Gleiniger,

Dr. Joh. Müller, Dr. Richard J. H. Gottheil, Dr. H. L. Strack,

Dr. K. Vollers, Dr. Th. Ch. L. Wijnmalen,

u. A.

Herausgegeben von Dr. August Müller

Jährlich 8 Hefte. Subscriptionspreis M. 8.—. Einzelpreis M. 10.—.

Urtheile.

— On peut dire non seulement qu'elle répond à l'attente mais qu'elle la dépasse de beaucoup. Complète, exacte et méthodique sont les trois qualités que l'on pourrait exiger: il réunit les entièrement. (Le Muséon tom. IV. 5.)

„Die Bibliographie ist mit höchster Sorgfalt gearbeitet und bis jetzt ganz regelmässig erschienen. Der sehr billige Preis ermöglicht jedem Interessenten die Anschaffung.“ Prof. Wellhausen, Theol. Litt. Ztg. 1889. 3.

„Man kann fest behaupten, dass etwas Ähnliches an umfassender und erschöpfender Sorgfalt auf dem Gebiete der orient. Literatur noch niemals geboten worden ist.“ Theol. Jahresbericht VIII.

just published:

ASSYRIAN GRAMMAR

with

Paradigms, Exercises, Glossary and Bibliography

by

Friedrich Delitzsch.

Translated from the German

by

Prof. Arch^d. R. S. Kennedy, B. D.

8. XVI. 446 p. cloth 15s.

This standard work thus becomes accessible to many students who would otherwise have had to contend with the difficulties of German as well as of the cuneiform writing etc. *The Nation, July 1889.*

Delitzsch's work is as simple and well arranged as is possible in the present state of Assyriology. The introduction, giving a sketch of Assyrian discovery and literature, is admirably written. *The Jewish Messenger Oct. 1889.*

SYRIAC GRAMMAR

with

Bibliography, Chrestomathy and Glossary

by

Dr. Eberhard Nestle.

Translated from the *second* German edition

by

Prof. Arch^d. R. S. Kennedy, B. D.

8o. XVI. 267 p. cloth 9s.

We welcome the second edition of this excellent elementary Syriac grammar no longer in Latin, but in German and English garb. It presupposes an acquaintance on the part of the student with Hebrew. Having such preparation, beginners will find the occasionally technical language of the author intelligible, his statements correct and concise, and his conception of what form the essentials of Syriac grammar just. As an elementary book, the grammar is compact and complete. (*The Presbyterian Review, April 1889.*)

Williams & Norgate, 14, Henrietta Str., Cov. Garden, London; and 20, South Frederick Str., Edinburgh.—B. Westermann & Co., 812, Broadway, New York.

It is an admirable little work, the best probably for beginners, as it contains a short but complete grammar, a reading specimen with analysis, a survey of Syriac literature, a Chrestomathy consisting of the first four chapters of Genesis, and a Glossary containing all the words occurring in the Chrestomathy, and explaining all the difficult forms. *Trübner's Record.*

LITTERATURA SYRIACA

extracted from the
Syriac Grammar

by
DR. EBERH. NESTLE.

8o. IV. 66 p. 2.

— — "It is very convenient, and librarians and bibliophiles will know how to value it." Independent 30. VIII. 88.

ARABIC GRAMMAR

with
Paradigms, Literature, Chrestomathy and Glossary

by
DR. A. SOCIN,

PROFESSOR IN THE UNIVERSITY OF LEIPSIK

8o. XVI. 294 p. cloth 7s. 6d.

Opinions and Reviews.

Dr. Socin, *therefore, deserves the sincere thanks of all engaged in Arabic tuition in this country for having recast into a new and more acceptable form the late Prof. Petermann's "Brevis linguae arabicae grammatica" which forms the 4th part of the well-known series of introductory oriental grammars styled "Porta linguarum orientalium."*

— — *Quite a novel feature is the addition of a series of well-chosen English sentences for translation into Arabic, which will be welcome to Indian Civil Service candidates at least as a stepping-stone to Arabic composition on a larger scale. The general outlines of the grammar have been preserved, but the hand of a judicious reviser is visible almost on every page* — — *room has been made for a short chapter on syntax, which gives, in the narrow space of 22 pages a clear and intelligible account of Arabic tenses, the government of verb and noun, and simple and compound sentences.*

This will no doubt be highly appreciated by the student, and assist him in mastering the contents of such standard grammars as Wright's, Caspari's or De Sacy's.

Athenaeum March 19. 86.

Williams & Norgate, 14, Henrietta Str., Cov. Garden, London; and 20, South Frederick Str., Edinburgh.—B. Westermann & Co., 812, Broadway, New York.

PORTA LINGUARUM ORIENTALIU

ELEMENTA LINGUARUM: Hebraicae, Phoeniciae, Biblico-Aramaicae, Samaritanae, Targumicae, Talmudicae, Syriacae, Arabicae, Aethiopicae, Assyriacae, Aegyptiacae, Copticae, Armeniacae, Persicae, Turcicae, aliarum studiis academicis accommodaverunt

J. H. Petermann, H. L. Strack, E. Nestle, A. Socin, F. Prätorius, Ad. Merx, Aug. Müller, Frdr. Delitzsch, C. Salemann, V. Shukovski, Th. Nöldeke, G. Steindorff, G. Jacob, G. Dalman, alii.

Die *Porta linguarum orientalium*, begonnen von Prof. Dr. J. H. Petermann, seit 1884 von Prof. D. H. L. Strack in Berlin unter Mitwirkung der hervorragendsten Fachmänner fortgesetzt, bezw. neuherausgegeben, soll als zweckmassigstes

— Hilfsmittel für das Studium der orientalischen Sprachen —

zunächst die erste Einführung in dasselbe vermitteln, und zwar unter gleichzeitiger Rücksichtnahme auf den Gebrauch bei akademischen Vorlesungen sowie für das Selbststudium.

Die *Grammatiken* bieten den besonderen Vorzug, dass sie dem Anfänger alles zur Kenntnis der einzelnen Sprache Erforderliche in einem Buche bieten, nämlich:

1. Eine kurze, aber vollständige *Grammatik*, in welcher, soweit thunlich, für die verschiedenen Sprachen ein gleicher Lehrgang befolgt und, bei den semitischen Sprachen, auf Übereinstimmung und Abweichung hingewiesen wird. Seit dem Jahre 1885 enthält jeder neu erscheinende Band auch einen Abriss der *Syntax*.

2. Eine *Chrestomathie*. Zur Sprachvergleichung und um eine sonst nötige *versio interlinearis* zu vermeiden, sind in sieben Teilen die vier ersten Kapitel der *Genesis* nach den alten Übersetzungen an den Anfang gestellt. — In einigen Teilen werden Leseübungen und aus einzelnen Formen bestehende Übungsstücke der eigentlichen *Chrestomathie* vorangeschickt.

3. Ein *Wörterbuch*, welches die in der *Grammatik* und im Übungsbuche vorkommenden Wörter erklärt.

4. Eine *Litteratur*, welche, sorgfältig zusammengestellt, Anregung zu tiefer eindringender Arbeit gibt.

Wo das Bedürfnis vorliegt, bringt die *Porta* auch für sich abgeschlossene *Chrestomathien*.

Bis jetzt weist die *Porta*

→ folgende 22 Bände auf: ↗ (siehe umstehend)

Neu 1890: Noeldeke u. Mueller, *Delectus veterum Carminum Arabicorum*. M. 7.—.

Strack, *hebräische Grammatik* 3. Auflage. M. 3.60.

Delectus Veterum Carminum

Arabicorum, carm. a. select. et
edidit Th. N. Ye. e. Glossar u.
confect. A. Müller. Pars XIII. 1890.
M. 7.—

Arabische Grammatik, mit Para-
digmen, Litteratur, Chrestomathie u.
Glossar v. *Georg Jacob*. (Vol. IV.) Zwei-
te Auflage. 1889. M. 6.—

Arabische Bibel-Chrestomathie,
herausgegeben u. mit einem Glossar
versehen von *Georg Jacob*. (Vol.
IX a.) 1888. M. 2 25

Assyrische Grammatik mit Para-
digmen, Übungsstücken, Glossar u.
Litteratur von *Friedr. Delitzsch*.
(Vol. X a.) 1889. M. 12.—

Aethiopische Grammatik, mit Para-
digmen, Litteratur, Chrestomathie
und Glossar von *Franz Pratorius*.
(Vol. VII b.) 1886. M. 6.—

Grammatica chaldaica, Litteratura,
Chrestomathia cum Glossario edidit
J. H. Petermann. Editio secunda
emendata. (Vol. III.) M. 4.—

Hebräische Grammatik m. Übungs-
buch von *H. L. Strack*. Dritte,
neubearb. Aufl. (Vol. Ia.) 1890. geb. M. 4.—

Grammaire hébraïque avec Para-
digmes, Exercices de lecture, Chresto-
mathie et Bibliogr. par *H. L. Strack*.
(Vol. Ic.) 1886. M. 3 25

Persische Grammatik mit Para-
digmen, Litteratur, Chrestomathie u.
Glossar v. *C. Salemann* u. *I. Shukowski*.
(Vol. XII.) 1889. M. 7.—

Syrische Grammatik mit Litteratur,
Chrestomathie und Glossar von
Ed. Nestle. Zweite verm. u. verbess.
Auflage. (Vol. Va.) 1888. M. 7.—

Grammatica Samaritana, Littera-
tura, Chrestomathia cum Glossario
edidit *J. H. Petermann*. (Vol. III.)
M. 4.—

Türkische Grammatik mit Para-
digmen, Litteratur, Chrestomathie u.
Glossar von *August M. d'Er*. (Vol. XI.)
1889. M. 8.—

Arabic Grammar, Paradigms, Lite-
rature, Chrestomathy and Glossary
by *A. Sann*. (Vol. IV b.) 1885
M. 7.—

Arabic Bible-Chrestomathy, with
a Glossary, edited by *George Jacob*.
(Vol. IX b.) 1888. M. 2. 0.

Assyrian Grammar with Para-
digms, Chrestomathy, Glossary and
Literature by *Friedr. Delitzsch*.
(Vol. X b.) 1889. M. 14.—

Grammatica aethiopica cum Para-
digm., Litteratura, Chrestomathia et
Glossario scriptis *Franz Pratorius*.
(Vol. VII a.) 1885. M. 6.—

Grammatica armeniaca, Littera-
tura, Chrestomathia cum Glossario
edidit *J. H. Petermann*. (Vol. VI.)
M. 4.—

Chrestomathia targumica edidit
adnot. critica et glossario instruxit
Ad Merx. (Vol. VIII.) 1888. M. 7 50

Hebrew Grammar with Read. book,
Exercises, Literat. and Vocab. by
H. L. Strack, second enl. ed.
(Vol. Ib.) 1889. M. 4.50.

Персидская Грамматика. Составил
К. Залеманъ и В. Жуковский. 1890
Preis geb. M. 4.—

Syriac Grammar with Bibliography,
Chrestomathy and Glossary by
Ed. Nestle. (Vol. V b.) 1889. M. 8.—

Lehrbuch der Neuhebräischen
Sprache u. Litteratur von *H. L. Strack*
u. *C. Siegfried*. (Ergänzungsband).
1884. M. 3.—

Die Erweiterung der Sammlung und die Gewinnung neuer hervorragender Mitarbeiter sind Gegenstand unausgesetzter Bemühungen des Herausgebers und der unterzeichneten Verlagsbuchhandlung.

Das wichtige Unternehmen sei hiermit Allen, welche für Sprachen und Litteratur des Orients ein Interesse haben, angelegentlichst empfohlen.

Berlin, September 1890. **H. Reuther's Verlagsbuchhandlung.**

== Zu beziehen durch jede Buchhandlung. ==

Williams and Norgate's School Books and Maps.

- Williams (T. S.)** Modern German and English Conversations and Elementary Phrases, the German revised and corrected by A. Kokemueller. 21st enlarged and improved Edition 12mo. cloth 3s
- Williams (T. S.) and C. Cruse.** German and English Commercial Correspondence. A Collection of Modern Mercantile Letters in German and English, with their Translation on opposite pages. 2nd Edition. 12mo. cloth 4s 6d
- Hickie (W. J.)** Easy German Reading-Book. With Outline of GRAMMAR, etc. 8vo. cloth 1s 6d
- Apel (H.)** German Prose Stories for Beginners (including Lessing's Prose Fables), with an interlinear Translation in the natural order of Construction. 2nd Edition. 12mo. cloth 2s 6d
-

German Classics for English Schools, with Notes and Vocabulary. Crown 8vo. cloth.

- Grimm's Hausmarchen**, by W. J. Hickie 2s
- Schiller's Lied von der Glocke** (The Song of the Bell), and other Poems and Ballads, by M. Förster 2s
- **Minor Poems.** By Arthur P. Vernon 2s
- **Maria Stuart**, by Moritz Förster 2s 6d
- Goethe's Hermann und Dorothea**, by M. Förster 2s 6d
- **Iphigenie auf Tauris.** With Notes by H. Attwell. 2s
- **Egmont.** By H. Apel 2s 6d
- Lessing's Minna von Barnhelm**, by Schmidt 2s 6d
- ——— **Emilia Galotti.** By G. Hein 2s
- Chamisso's Peter Schlemihl**, by M. Förster 2s
- Andersen (H. C.) Bilderbuch ohne Bilder**, by Beck 2s
- Nieritz. Die Waise**, a Tale, by Otte 2s
- Hauff's Märchen.** A Selection, by A. Hoare 3s 6d
-

- Fouque's Undine, Sintram, Aslauga's Ritter, die beiden Hauptleute.** 4 vols. in 1. 8vo. cloth 5s
- Undine.** 1s 6d; cloth, 2s. **Aslauga.** 1s 6d; cloth, 2s
- Sintram.** 2s 6d; cloth, 3s. **Hauptleute.** 1s 6d; cloth, 2s

Latin, Greek, etc.

- Cæsar de Bello Gallico.** Lib. I. Edited with Introduction, Notes and Maps, by ALEXANDER M. BELL, M.A. Ball. Coll., Oxon. Crown 8vo. cloth 2s 6d
- Euripides' Medea.** The Greek Text, with Introduction and Explanatory Notes for Schools, by J. H. Hogan. 8vo. cloth 3s 6d
- **Ion.** Greek Text, with Notes for Beginners, Introduction and Questions for Examination, by the Rev. Charles Badham, D.D. 2nd Edition. 8vo. 3s 6d
- Platonis Philebus.** With Introduction and Notes by Dr. C. Badham. 2nd Edition, considerably augmented. 8vo. cloth 4s
- Dr. D. Zompolides.** A Course of Modern Greek, or the Greek Language of the Present Day. I. The Elementary Method. Crown 8vo. 5s
-

- Kiepert New Atlas Antiquus.** Maps of the Ancient World, for Schools and Colleges. 6th Edition. With a complete Geographical Index. Folio, boards 7s 6d
- Kampen.** 15 Maps to illustrate Cæsar's De Bello Gallico. 15 coloured Maps. 4to. cloth 3s 6d
-

Spanish.

- Harvey (W. F.) Practical Spanish Manual.** Grammar, Exercises, Reading Lessons, &c. Crown 8vo. cloth 4s 6d
-

Italian.

- Volpe (Cav. G.) Eton Italian Grammar,** for the use of Eton College. Including Exercises and Examples. New Edition. Crown 8vo. cloth (Key, 1s) 4s 6d
- Racconti Istorici e Novelle Morali.** Edited, for the use of Italian Students, by G. Christison. 12th Edition. 18mo. cloth 1s 6d
- Rossetti.** Exercises for securing Idiomatic Italian, by means of Literal Translations from the English by Maria F. Rossetti. 12mo. cloth 3s 6d
- **Aneddoti Italiani.** One Hundred Italian Anecdotes, selected from "Il Compagno del Passeggio."